

## TOPIC 1

### EARLY HISTORY OF EAST AFRICA

#### **Who were the early inhabitants of the East African coast?**

1. Little is known about these early inhabitants
2. But it is said some were hunters and food gathers
3. They were at times called Bushmen / Hottentots
4. They were Khoisan as known to modern historians
5. These occupied the Tanzanian and Kenyan Highlands
6. The Bantu and Cushites later displace these early inhabitants
7. The Hadzapi, Sandawe and the Ndorobo are said to be some of their survivors
8. The Bantu came from Central Africa around 500AD
9. They occupied towns like Sofala, Malindi, Kilwa and Mombasa.
10. Their main occupation was farming
11. The Cushites were also among the first inhabitants
12. They migrated from North or North- eastern Ethiopia, because of the Galla
13. They occupied the Northern part of the coast and were cattle keepers
14. They are classified into the Northern Cushites and Southern Cushites
15. Examples of Cushites include the Galla, Rendile, Somalis etc
16. The Arabs and Persians came from the 7<sup>th</sup> C and took over the coast

#### **What was the way of life of these early inhabitants by 1000AD?**

#### **Describe the organization of the Zenj Empire before the coming of foreigners?**

1. The coast by 1000AD was inhabited by three groups of people
2. These were the Bushmen, Bantu and Cushites
3. They were organized politically, economically and socially as below

4. Politically, each settlement was independent and had its own chief.
5. For example, the Bantu had chiefs.
6. Chiefdoms were therefore the basic political settlements for these early people
7. Each group had its own unique political features
8. For example, those of the Bantu were different from those of the Cushites
9. They also had small armies armed with axes and spears for defence purposes
10. The Cushites had no centralized administration
11. Instead they were led by clan leaders
12. Economically, the bantu carried out agriculture
13. Growing mainly bananas and millet
14. They also carried out fishing especially those who lived near rivers
15. Hunted wild animals as a way of getting food
16. Traded in food stuffs and iron tools like hoes with their neighbours
17. Iron working was also carried out
18. They made hoes, spears and arrows for use in defence and agriculture
19. Pastoralism was carried out especially by the Cushites who were nomads
20. They also mined especially gold which they exchanged with their neighbours
21. Socially, the Bantu stayed in settled communities
22. Built small wattle houses that were grass thatched
23. Primitive societies like the bushmen had no permanent settlement
24. They instead lived in caves and tree branches
25. Unlike the Bantu who had permanent homes, the Bushmen were wanderers
26. There was traditional worship/ worshipped small gods
27. They believed in life after death
28. Some of these early inhabitants were cannibals had sharpened teeth/ fierce

## **What was the land of Zenj?**

1. It refers to the stretch of land between Mogadishu and cape Delgado
2. It was approximately 3000 kilometers long
3. It stretched 10 miles into the interior of East Africa
4. Later it came to be the “Zenj Empire”
5. The name was given to the coastal settlements by the early Arabs and Persians
6. To mean ‘the land of the blacks’
7. It was also called Azania by the Greeks
8. Modern Historians refer to it as Zinjanthropole
9. The Zenj land was grouped into 3 clusters of settlement
10. Benadir (North of Mogadishu) comprising of Mogadishu, Barawa, Merca, Kismayu
11. Malindi (Gedi, Kaliifi, Takangu)
12. South Coast (Kilwa and Sofola)
13. These towns and settlement totaled up to 37 in number
14. Today, the name – Zanj survives in the name Zanzibar
15. Its original inhabitants were the Bushmen, followed by the Bantu and Cushites
16. Later the Arabs, Persians, Indonesians, Egyptians and Indians came to the coast
17. But it was a misleading interpretation of the East African coast
18. Such an empire never existed on the east African coast

## **Why did the Arabs have little interest in the interior of East Africa before 1840?**

1. They had not come to spread Islam – not Muslim missionaries
2. They were more interested in trade than Islam

3. They could obtain all the trade goods at the coast e.g. ivory, slaves, gold, tortoise shells, copper and leopard skins
4. The demand for goods they traded in with the people of the interior was low
5. The demand for goods from the interior could be met by African suppliers from the interior
6. They came as refugees
7. They were ignorant of the interior potentials
8. Their knowledge of the interior was still very limited
9. Geographical barriers
10. There was the fear of hostile tribes
11. They were few
12. Wild animals in the interior
13. There was the danger of tropical diseases
14. They were also problem of transport and communication
15. Language was another problem
16. Civil war in the interior
17. The chaos at the coast between the Arabs and the Portuguese which pre-occupied them
18. No serious competition at the coast
19. Trade route from the interior had not been established on a permanent basis
20. Seyyid Said had not yet shifted his capital to the coast
21. Africans had not realized the importance of the Arabs and thus did not welcome them
22. The good climate at the coast
23. Lack of support from their home governments

**Why did they finally get interested between 1840 and 1885?**

1. The abundant trade opportunities in the interior

2. The increased demand for goods from the interior could not be met by the African suppliers
3. The arrival of Seyyid Said and his interest in trade
4. He helped organize caravans into the interior
5. He also gave them protection with a red flag from Zanzibar
6. The Bayans who financed the caravans asked for heavy interest because of the risks involved
7. He signed commercial treaties with France, USA and Britain, thus the volume of trade increased and increased demand forced the Arabs inland
8. By 1840, the Arabs had got the knowledge of the interior and could hope for safety
9. They had even known where to get trade commodities
10. They had grown richer and stronger
11. Transport had improved from head portage to donkeys
12. They wanted to eliminate the African middlemen and control the sources of the commodities directly so as to earn more profits they were expensive
13. Some Arabs had already settled in the interior e.g. Tippu Tip
14. They were welcomed by the interior chiefs e.g. Kabaka Muteesa of Buganda, Mirambo
15. Some Arabs wanted to spread Islam in the interior e.g. Abraham
16. The establishment of clove plantation led to increased demand for slaves
17. Stiff competition for trade items
18. Population increase at the coast
19. The coming of Christians forced them to move into the interior
20. With the introduction of the gun, security in the interior improved
21. African leaders realized the importance of the gun
22. They wanted to establish military bases in the interior

**Why did the Arabs settle on the East African coast between 1000 – 1500?**

1. These came to the coast between 1000 – 1500AD
2. Came from modern state in the middle east like Arabia, Syria, Iran, Iraq and turkey
3. Desire to control the profitable trade at coast
4. Desire to control the coastal trade / Indian Ocean trade
5. Availability of trade items like gold, ivory, copper, slaves
6. Due to religious disputes in Arabia
7. Political prosecutions in Arabia
8. Defeated groups were forced to escape as refugee
9. Desire to spread Islam
10. To create a Muslim empire
11. Hospitality of the coastal people
12. Attracted by the monsoon winds and dhows
13. Good coastal climate that was ideal for their settlement
14. Rich fertile soils, good for agriculture
15. Presence of good natural harbors
16. Presence of fresh drinking water
17. The spirit of adventure/ exploration
18. Influence of the first Arabs
19. To colonize/ rule the coast/ imperialistic nature of the Arabs

**What were the effects of the Arab settlement at the coast?**

1. Islam was introduced and flourished at the coast
2. Introduced Arabic architecture i.e. ways of building using bricks, flat topped houses
3. Introduced the art of boat building
4. Led to the introduction of new forms of currency e.g. cowrie shells

5. Some towns minted and used coins like Kilwa and Sofola
6. Led to intermarriages between Arabs and the local Africans
7. Intermarriages gave rise to Swahili race and culture
8. Birth of Swahili language
9. Led to new form of dressing i.e. use of Kanzus
10. Spread of Muslim habits like fasting, eating etc
11. Arabic was introduced as the official language
12. Guns were introduced at the coast
13. New form of weaponry like daggers, swords etc
14. Fighting increased due to the introduction of guns
15. Sharia law/ administration was introduced
16. Agriculture and fishing intensified to feed the increased population
17. New crops were introduced at the coast e.g. Banana, rice, wheat, sugarcanes etc
18. Use of human feces as manure
19. Initially population increased
20. Africa was linked to the outside world/ international market
21. Led to the prosperity of the participants
22. Many coastal towns developed e.g. Kilwa, Sofola, Mogadishu etc
23. Rivalry / conflicts for the control of the trade e.g. Malindi vs Mombasa, Kilwa vs Sofola
24. New commodities were introduced e.g. cloth, beads, glass etc
25. The relationship between the Arabs and the Africans at the coast increased
26. Led to the decline in the local industries as the imported Arab goods flooded the market
27. The standard of the Bantu at the coast improved due to the prosperous trade
28. Led to rural – urban migration due to the development of coastal towns.
29. Increased demand for slaves increased slave raiding/ warfare/ insecurity
30. There was depopulation due to slave raids and wars

31. The Arab immigrants became rulers (sultans) over the local African at the coast
32. Coastal prosperity later attracted the Portuguese who plundered the coastal towns

**What factors led to the rapid growth of the East African coastal states between 1000 – 1500AD?**

1. Between 1000 – 1500, a total of 37 towns had developed along the coast
2. These included Malindi, Kilwa, Mombasa, Zanzibar, Mogadishu etc
3. The absorption and displacement of the hunters and food gatherers by the Cushites and Bantu
4. The Indian Ocean trade created wealth that was used to develop the coastal towns
5. E.g. Kilwa benefited from the sale of gold and Mombasa from the sale of ivory and slaves
6. Trade further introduced guns and swords
7. The monsoon winds that eased the transportation of goods using the dhows
8. Islam acted as rallying point for all Muslims
9. The use of Sharia law brought law and order in the region
10. The introduction of cowrie shells improved trade
11. The presence of highly demanded goods like gold, slaves copper and silver
12. The coming of many immigrants from outside boosted the coastal population
13. These included the Bantu, Cushites, Egyptians, Persians, Syrians and Arabs
14. Some bantu practiced iron working and produced iron implements for agriculture and defence
15. The coastal climate was cool and ideal for human settlement
16. The presence of fertile soils guaranteed a constant food supply
17. Most towns developed on Islands, giving them added natural protection
18. The good natural harbors accommodated big ships from Middle East, Far East, and Europe
19. Taxation of visiting traders ensured a source of revenue for development
20. The development and use of Kiswahili language eased communication and aided development
21. Some towns developed because they controlled major items. Sofola – gold trade

22. The good leadership provided by the coastal leaders
23. Availability of trade items like gold, ivory, copper, slaves increased the volume of trade
24. The introduction of cowrie shells improved on trade
25. Later coins were minted which improved business transactions further
26. Some towns developed on islands like Zanzibar which gave them added protection from mainland attacks
27. Hospitality of the coastal people
28. Presence of cheap slave labour boosted development
29. Introduction of Persian and Arabic architecture

**Describe the growth and development of Mombasa and Zanzibar by 1500AD**

**ZANZIBAR**

1. It was among the first places to be settled by foreigners of Arabs and Persians origin
2. It is believed the earliest known trading post Qanbah was built in Pemba Island
3. Probably it began life in the 11<sup>th</sup> centuries
4. This was following the years of Arabs and Persians on the Island
5. It was called Zanj-bar meaning the coast of the black people
6. She had one of the best natural harbors at the coast
7. The harbors brought in many traders and settlers which boosted trade and agriculture
8. Between the 14<sup>th</sup> and 15<sup>th</sup> century it was developed into a principal center of wealth and power
9. But it was not as strong as Mombasa and Kilwa in power and influence at the coast
10. At the height of Kilwa's glory, Zanzibar was probably under its influence for a period until the 15<sup>th</sup> century
11. At this time Zanzibar began minting her own coins as a sign of independence
12. She gained a lot of wealth from the Indian ocean trade

13. She maintained trade contacts with India, Persia, Arabia etc
14. All building and architecture followed the Persian and Arabic styles
15. People dressed in silks, fine clothes and decorated Arab gowns
16. They were packed building some built with stones and flat roofed
17. Writing on walls and tombstones were in Arabic script of various styles
18. Wells were built of stones and water was often stored in cisterns in the houses

## **MOMBASA**

1. Little is known about early Mombasa
2. It was located between Mogadishu and Zanzibar
3. Its assumed the town was founded around the 12<sup>th</sup> century
4. Just like Kilwa, Mombasa was founded by the descendants of the Shiraz
5. These displaced the Cushites and Bantu who had already settled in this place
6. It was founded as an export center for slaves and ivory
7. It remained a small town until the 15<sup>th</sup> when it suddenly expanded because of trade
8. It developed because of her trade with Arabs
9. In her trade with rest of the world, she got sheep, rice, goats and oranges
10. She had very good natural harbors
11. Ships or dhows could easily flow from Mombasa to other areas like Malindi, Sofola
12. Mombasa's location between Arabia and East African coast also helped her to grow
13. It was a beautiful city built of stones and flat topped houses
14. It was a town with good streets and spacious roads
15. Mosques and Koran schools were built and its inhabitants were committed Muslims
16. Its people were of two races i.e. a mixture of Arabs and Africans
17. She became a center of Swahili culture as a result of intermarriages
18. She was always at war with her neighbours especially Malindi

19. With the advent of the Portuguese the town put up one of the greatest resistance
20. By the 16<sup>th</sup> Century Mombasa was one of the most powerful towns at the coast

**What were the main features of life in these towns during the same period?**

**Describe the social political and economic way of life of the people at the East African coast in period between 1000 – 1500AD**

**Describe the organization of the “Zenj” empire before external contacts with foreigners.**

1. The coast/ Zenj was inhabited by three groups by 1500AD
2. These were the Cushites Arabs and Persians
3. Development of towns e.g. Mombasa, Sofola, Zanzibar etc
4. These towns were ruled by either a Sultan or a Sheikh
5. Some were fortified and others built on Islands e.g. Zanzibar
6. There were intermarriages between the Arabs and local people
7. There was growth of Swahili culture
8. There was development of Swahili language
9. Islam was the main religion
10. Mosques and Islamic schools sprung up
11. Islamic monuments were built with Arabic words inscribed on them
12. Islamic teachers were trained
13. Arabic was an official language
14. Trade flourished
15. Exports were gold, slaves, ivory and they imported beads and silk etc
16. A class of the rich grew
17. Sharia law became the basis judicial dispensation
18. The Arabic way of dressing was introduced

19. Veils for women and kanzus for men became common
20. Arabic architecture flourished
21. There were coastal rivalries i.e. Mombasa vs Malindi
22. Agriculture was practiced
23. Hand craft was practiced
24. Animals like large goats and sheep were also raised
25. Arabs imposed themselves as rulers over the local people

**What factors led the rise of the Islamic civilization at the East African coast between 1000 – 1500?**

1. It refers to the complete way of life brought by the coming of the Arabs
2. It involves the political, economic and social systems
3. It originated from Saudi Arabia in Mecca
4. The rise of Mohammed (P.B.U.H) was the founder of Islam
5. Fanatic Muslims came from Arabia to East Africa between 100AD and 1500AD
6. Through the Muslim schools built at Kilwa
7. Through the Muslim teachers
8. The teachers emphasized the teaching of Quran which became the holy book
9. Arabs were attracted at the coast by the good climate
10. Fertile soils at the coast also attracted them
11. Through intermarriages between the Africans and Arabs
12. Through businessmen and traders at the coast
13. Through Arabic language
14. The presence of the monsoon winds
15. Good natural harbours

16. Rise of principal centers of wealth and power e.g. Kilwa, Mombasa

**How did the Islamic civilization affect the coastal people between 1000 – 1500 AD?**

1. These effects were both negative and positive
2. Increased foreign population of Arabs and Persians
3. There was development of trade i.e. Indian Ocean trade
4. Through trade contacts East Africa became known
5. Arabs introduced the Islamic culture of dressing , eating
6. Also came with Arabic unique style of building e.g. use of stones
7. Brought new items of trade like rice
8. Introduced guns, swords, daggers as fighting weapons
9. Introduced Arabic language at the coast which became official
10. Islamic religion developed as mosques were established e.g. at Kilwa
11. Intermarriages between the Arabs and the Africans occurred giving rise to Swahili culture
12. Led to development of town sat the coast like Mombasa
13. Islamic learning, reading and writing of the Quran became important
14. Their administration was based on Quran
15. Islamic courts of law increased equality and justice
16. Arabs promoted slave trade at the coast which resulted into human suffering and misery

**What factors led to the development of the Indian Ocean trade**

1. This was the trade between the East African coast and the outside world
2. It developed with the coming of the Arabs between 1000 -1500AD
3. It developed because the coast provided ideal climate, a variety of trade goods, ideal harbor inlet etc
4. Foreign traders were Arabs, Greeks, Persians, Syrians, Malaysians

5. Trading with the Cushites and Bantu
6. The displacement of the hunters and food gatherers by the Cushites and Bantu
7. Presence of African middlemen like Nyika and Makaranga
8. Presence of slaves that acted as porters carrying goods from point to another
9. The role played by the Arabs and Persians
10. The imports were raw materials for this trade e.g. rice, wheat, guns etc
11. The high demand for guns by the local people
12. The presence of gold and ivory which were badly needed by the Arabs for export
13. Specialization e.g. Sofala monopolized the gold trade
14. Kilwa benefited from the sale of gold and Mombasa from the sale of ivory and slaves
15. The presence of Islam cemented unity among traders
16. Arabic became the official language while Kiswahili became the business language
17. The influence of monsoon winds that pushed dhows
18. Able leadership i.e. Afro- Arabs leaders organized the trade
19. Innovations like the minting of coins that were used as a currency
20. Presence of a wider market i.e. East African coast, interior and Asia
21. The strategic location and good natural harbors
22. The good coastal climate
23. The fertile soils provided basis for food production
24. The presence of a wealth group of people (Banyans) who financed the trade
25. Hospitality of the coastal people attracted the foreigners
26. The rise powerful towns that acted as markets in the trade
27. Presence of fresh water

**What role did the African play in the Indian Ocean trade?**

1. This was the trade between East African coast and the outside

2. Conducted across the Indian Ocean
3. Developed with the coming of the Arabs
4. Foreign traders used vessels called dhows to come to the coast
5. These were blown by the monsoon winds
6. From Nov – April the winds blew towards Africa
7. While from May - October blew towards the Asian continent
8. Foreign traders were Arabs, Greeks, Persians, Syrians, Malaysians
9. Trading with the Cushites and the Bantu
10. Bantu tribes controlled the trade between the interior and the coast
11. They also acted as middlemen at the coast
12. Supplied most of the trade items
13. Goods were transported by African intermediaries (middlemen)
14. Like the Nyika and Makaranga
15. The trade was controlled by African chiefs

**How was trade on the East Africa coast organized?**

**Describe the trading activities between Azania and Asia during the same period.**

**Describe the organization of East Africa's external trade before 1500AD?**

**Describe the trade on the east African coast before Ad 1500?**

1. This was the Indian Ocean trade/ coastal trade/ Trans Indian Ocean trade
2. Or East African external trade/ the trade between Asia and the East African coast
3. It developed with the coming of the Arabs
4. It developed because the coast provided ideal climate, a variety of trade goods, ideal harbor inlet etc
5. Foreign traders were Arabs, Greeks, Persians, Syrians, Malaysians
6. Trading with the Cushites and the Bantu

7. Foreign traders used vessels called dhows to come to the coast
8. These were blown by the monsoon winds
9. From Nov – April the winds blew towards Africa
10. While from May - October blew towards the Asian continent
11. Bantu tribes controlled the trade between the interior and the coast
12. The coastal people took over as middlemen at the coast
13. Most of these items were got from the interior of East Africa
14. Trade items were mainly exported through the Indian Ocean
15. And to a smaller extent, the Red Sea and Mediterranean Sea
16. Ivory was exported to china for bangles, bracelets, ornaments
17. Slaves to the Middle East as domestic servants, soldiers and miners
18. Imports were bowls, silk, guns, gun- powder, swords, clothes, beads
19. The medium of exchange was barter
20. At times cowrie shells from Maldives Islands were used as currency
21. With time, towns like Kilwa and Zanzibar minted and used coins
22. The medium of communication was Kiswahili
23. East Africa's major exports were gold, slaves and ivory
24. Other exports included animal skins, rhinoceros horns, copper
25. Most of the exports came from the interior
26. For example, gold came from Menomotapa kingdom
27. Sofala and Kilwa were the main gold centres
28. Ivory by hunting elephants and reached the coast at Sofala
29. Slaves were mainly obtained through raids and were sold at the coast
30. Goods passed through many hands before they could reach the coast
31. Goods were transported by African intermediaries (middlemen) like the Nyika and Makaranga
32. The means of transport was by head portorage

33. Foreign traders did not enter the interior fearing the hostility of some tribes, wild animals and diseases
34. The trade was controlled by the wealthy Arabs, Banyans and African chiefs
35. Some Arabs decided to settle permanently on the coast
36. Trading centers were Kilwa, Malindi, Sofala, Mombasa and Zanzibar
37. Increased demand forced the Arabs to penetrate into the interior
38. The most important ports of call included Yemen, Handramont, Oman, Hormuz

**What were the effects of this trade on the coastal people?**

**How was the “Zenj” empire affected by the commercial activities at the coast between 1000 – 1500AD?**

1. Effects were political, economic and social, some positive and others negative
2. Islam was introduced and flourished at the coast
3. Introduced Arabic architecture i.e. ways of building using bricks, flat topped houses, arches, domes
4. Introduced the art of boat building
5. Led to the introduction of new forms of currency e.g. cowrie shells
6. Some towns minted and used coins like Kilwa and Sofola
7. Led to intermarriages between the local Africans and Arabs
8. Intermarriages gave rise to Swahili race
9. The Swahili race came with the Kiswahili language
10. Leading to the birth of the Swahili culture
11. Led to new forms of dressing i.e. use of kanzus, veils, turbans
12. Spread of Muslim habits like fasting, eating etc
13. Arabic was introduced as the official language
14. Guns were introduced at the coast

15. New forms of weaponry like daggers, swords etc
16. Fighting increased due to introduction of guns
17. Sharia law/ Khadi administration was introduced/ Islamic rule
18. Agriculture and fishing intensified to feed the increased population
19. New crops were introduced at the coast e.g. Banana, rice, wheat, sugarcanes etc
20. Arabic foods and food etiquettes were introduced e.g. pepper, chapattis, rice
21. Use of human faeces as manure
22. Initially population increased
23. Koranic schools were built to promote literacy
24. Trade boomed / increased at the coast
25. People abandoned native economic activities like fishing, farming for trade
26. There was the minting and use of coins
27. East Africa was linked to the outside world/ international market
28. Led to the prosperity of the participants
29. Many coastal towns developed e.g. Kilwa, Sofala, Mogadishu etc
30. Rivalry/ conflicts for the control of the trade e.g. Malindi vs Mombasa, Kilwa vs Sofala
31. New commodities were introduced to the Africans e.g. cloth, beads, glass etc
32. The relationship between the Arabs and the Africans at the coast increased
33. Led to the decline in the local industries as the imported Arab goods flooded the market
34. The standard of the bantu at the coast improved due to the prosperous trade
35. Led to rural- urban migration due to the development of coastal towns
36. Increased demand for slaves increased slave raiding/ warfare/ insecurity
37. Leading to the development of slave trade
38. Raids resulted into suffering and misery
39. Intertribal wars in the interior increased
40. Loss of lives.

41. There was depopulation due to slave raids and wars
42. There was loss of culture/ detribalization/ deculturation
43. Population increased at the coast due to influx of foreigners
44. The Arab immigrants became rulers over the local African at the coast
45. Arabic titles like Sultan, Shiekh were adopted by the coast leaders
46. The coastal people lost independence to the Arabs
47. Depletion of African resources like minerals, wildlife and human resources
48. Led to collapse of local industries and technology e.g. textile and crafts
49. Coastal prosperity later attracted the Portuguese who plundered the coastal towns

### **Why did the Coastal towns decline by 1500?**

1. Towards 1500, most of the coastal towns had started declining. This was due;
2. The activities of the sea pirates
3. Disunity of the coastal states undermined peace and prosperity
4. Rivalry among the coastal towns e.g. Mombasa against Malindi
5. Trading items had become scarce
6. The coming of the Portuguese was the main reason for the collapse of the coastal towns
7. The Portuguese created wars at the coast that disorganized trade
8. There were cultural and religious differences between the Portuguese and coastal towns
9. And religious differences i.e. between Christianity and Islam
10. The Portuguese chased away the Arabs who had developed the coast
11. The destruction of gardens led to the outbreak of famine
12. The effects of slave trade devastated the coastal towns
13. The Segeju and Zimba cannibals from the Zambezi valley devastated Kilwa, Malindi and Mombasa
14. Constant resistance from the coastal towns like Mombasa affected trade

15. In 1528 Mombasa rebelled but it was quelled and the town was ruined
16. The Portuguese looted and burnt the coastal towns like Kilwa and Mombasa
17. They also overtaxed the coastal people, impoverishing them
18. Portuguese officials were dishonest and corrupt and kept money from taxes to themselves

**Explain the origin and development of the Swahili culture along the East African coast**

The word Kiswahili originated and development of the Swahili culture along the East African coast

- a. The word Kiswahili originated from an Arab word “Swahili” meaning Coast
- b. The Swahili culture began with the Arab contacts on the East African coast
- c. At times is referred to as Afro- Arab culture
- d. It developed between 13<sup>th</sup> and 15<sup>th</sup>
- e. It was complete civilization borrowing much from Arabic and African way of life
- f. The Arab on reaching the coast intermarried with the coastal people giving birth to a new race called the Swahili people
- g. The Swahili were half cast “brown in colour”
- h. The Swahili spoke Kiswahili as their language
- i. It was a mixture of Bantu and Arab language
- j. This language remained uninterrupted up to the 16<sup>th</sup> C
- k. The Swahili occupied the coastal areas of Kenya and Tanganyika
- l. They were basically Muslims due to Arab influence
- m. As a result, a number of mosques or Koranic schools were built
- n. They adopted Arabic ways of dressing Turbans
- o. Veils for women and kanzus, caps for men
- p. They were mainly traders in items like gold, silk, ivory which made them rich
- q. Their system of administration was based on the Sharia law and Islamic practices

- r. They used new titles of leadership e.g. Sheikh, Sultan and Qadi (Khadis)
- s. They used the Koran as the holy book
- t. The Swahili people took up Arabic architecture e.g. flat topped houses, use of burnt bricks, uses of arches and domes
- u. The Swahili also carried out agriculture e.g. grew vegetables to supplement their diet
- v. They also kept some animals like goats, sheep, cattle
- w. Their main food stuff were wheat, lemons, oranges, rice
- x. They were restricted from eating pork
- y. The Swahili culture grew steadily though by the 16<sup>th</sup> their culture was disrupted by the coming of the Portuguese

**What effects did this culture have on the people of the coast?**

- a. Mosques/ Koranic schools were built all over the coast
- b. Islamic fostered unity among the Moslem brothers
- c. Islam greatly influenced the coastal cultures
- d. Mainly towns developed e.g. Mombasa, Kilwa etc
- e. The introduction of the Sharia law strengthened administration at the coast
- f. Improved morality at the coast due to strict Koranic teaching against immorality
- g. There were intermarriages which gave rise to the Swahili people
- h. The new Swahili culture came with new language i.e Kiswahili
- i. Arabic was also adopted as the official language
- j. Kiswahili became the Lingua Franca
- k. Strong commercial links were established externally
- l. The Arabs who spread Islam imposed themselves on the local people as rulers
- m. Food and sitting etiquette changed among the coastal people e.g. Pilao, chapat, rice and sitting crossed- legged

- n. New crops were brought e.g. rice, wheat, oranges, lemons
- o. Some African societies were absorbed by the Swahili culture
- p. Islam exposed the East African coastal towns to the outside world especially Arabia, Persia and India
- q. There was an increase in population
- r. There was improved standards of living among the coastal people
- s. Some societies at the coast gave up their economic activities e.g. food gathering, hunting for trade
- t. Islamic practices were introduced e.g. circumcision, praying five times a day, fasting etc
- u. New ruling dynasties were formed e.g. Siraz dynasty
- v. Islam was further encouraged or spread at the coast
- w. It led to increase of slavery along the East African coast

## **TOPIC 2**

### **PORTUGUESE RULE ON THE COAST**

**Why did the Portuguese come to the East African coast?**

**Why were the Portuguese interested in controlling the East African coast during the 16<sup>th</sup> century?**

- a. They wanted to take part in the Indian ocean trade
- b. The wish to control the coastal trade
- c. Presence of highly demanded goods like ivory, gold, spices, slaves etc
- d. Obtain wealth from the coast
- e. Hoped to levy taxes and tribute on the coastal towns
- f. The strategic location of the coast
- g. Ideal for repairing vessels en route and getting fresh supplies
- h. The coast had good natural harbors
- i. Search for a direct route to India/ East which was rich in a variety of goods
- j. Need to avoid the traditional land route under Muslim control

- k. The Portuguese wanted to rule the coastal people
- l. The desire to spread Christianity
- m. Wanted to revenge against the Muslims who had overran the Iberian Peninsular
- n. The search for the legendary John Prester believed to be inland for assistance.
- o. Believed that controlling the coast would prevent the Egyptians, Persian and Turkish forces from helping the Moslems brothers at the coast
- p. Spirit of adventure and exploration spearheaded by Prince Henry the Navigator and executed by Diaz, da Gama
- q. The hospitality of the coastal people towards foreigners
- r. To prevent other European rivals from gaining access to the coast
- s. The coast would provide bases for Portuguese ships and troops

**Describe the Portuguese conquest of East African coast between 1500 and 1510**

**How did the Portuguese gain control of the East African coast by 1510?**

**Describe the stages of the Portuguese conquest of the coast up 1510**

**Describe the Portuguese conquest of the East African coast between 1498 – 1510**

**How did the Portuguese conquer the East African coast?**

1. The conquest of the coast started with Vasco Dagama first journey to the far east in 1498
2. The decision was then taken after Vasco Dagama return to Portugal in 1499
3. The reasons being the good natural harbors, strategic location and the prosperous trade
4. 1500 Pedro Alvares Cabral made an unsuccessful attack on Sofala
5. Hoping to control its gold trade
6. 1502 Vasco Dagama returned on his second journey
7. He had a heavily armed fleet of 19 ships
8. Attacked Kilwa because of its gold

9. The Palace and Sultan Ibrahim were seized
10. Only released after recognizing Portuguese sovereignty and tribute was imposed
11. 1503 Ruy Lourenco Ravasco came and was able to conquer Zanzibar and Mafia and other small towns
12. Tributes imposed and towns left in ruins
13. 1504 Lopez Suarez made unsuccessful attack on Kilwa and its harbors
14. Gold trade disrupted
15. 1505 Fransisco D'Almeda first viceroy of Goa, came with a large expedition of 20 warships and 1500 soldiers
16. He managed to attack Sofala, Kilwa and Mombasa
17. Sofala surrendered without struggle
18. The 1500 men then attacked Kilwa, deposed the Sultan and a new ruler was appointed
19. The Sultan and people of Kilwa fled the town
20. The town was then destroyed of its fine architecture and looted
21. Mombasa tried to resist but was defeated and looted
22. D'Alemeida's junior commander accomplished the conquest by erecting stone forts around Kilwa and Sofala
23. 1506 – 7 Tristo da Cunha invaded the islands of Oja, Brava, Lamu, pate, Sicotra etc
24. Some towns like Lamu quietly surrendered and only paid tribute
25. Towns that welcomed and cooperated with the Portuguese like Malindi were as a reward exempted from paying taxes
26. 1509 Mafia, Pemba, Zanzibar etc were brought under Portuguese rule by the efforts of affanso D'Albuquerque
27. 1509 Dom Duarte Delmos visited Mafia, Pemba and Zanzibar and forced to pay tribute
28. Defeat of large Egyptian fleet at Diu
29. For effective control of the coast, headquarters were set up at Goa under a Viceroy
30. By 1510 the entire coast was under Portuguese control
31. And 2 captains appointed to govern the East African coast

32. One for the south was to be based at Mozambique and the one for the north at Malindi
33. The headquarters were set at Goa in India

**Why did the Portuguese conquer the East African coast with a lot of ease?**

1. The Portuguese were the first Europeans to settle at the east African coast
2. They were militarily superior
3. The Portuguese were well trained
4. They were skilled in navy warfare
5. Disunity and rivalry among the coastal towns
6. E.g. the sultan of Malindi refused to assist Mombasa when the Portuguese struck
7. The Portuguese had superior weapons e.g. cannon guns
8. They wore armours and carried maskets
9. Used strong and large ships called carracks
10. The coastal towns had inferior weapons and their soldiers ill trained
11. Their home government materially and financially supported them
12. They applied divide and rule
13. For example they allied with Malindi to fight with others
14. They used surprise attacks on the coastal settlements
15. Had able, brave and determined leaders
16. The Arabs had weakened and disorganized the coastal towns
17. Some states were weakened by Kilwa's expansionist policy
18. Others were weakened by the attacks of the Segeju's and Zimbabwes
19. Absence of rivalry and competition from other European powers
20. The weak economies of the coastal states/ poverty
21. Diseases and famine weakened others

22. The coastal people strongly hated the Arabs
23. Portuguese determination to annex the coastal states
24. Prior information/ Vasco da Gama had surveyed the coast before.

### **Why did African resistance against the Portuguese fail?**

1. The coastal towns were rivals e.g. Malindi against Mombasa
2. Malindi cooperated and harbored the Portuguese
3. They were militarily weak against the well trained Portuguese soldiers
4. Disunity among the African societies
5. They had inferior weapons compared to the muskets or smoked guns
6. Some African societies surrendered to avoid Portuguese ruthlessness
7. The wazimbas ate African fighters which favoured the Portuguese
8. Africans rulers underestimated the power of the Portuguese
9. The Portuguese used surprise attacks on the coastal states/ at dawn
10. Portuguese soldiers were protected by armours
11. The original Africans who had lost power cooperated with the Portuguese against the Arab leaders (sultana and sheikhs)
12. The Portuguese were determined
13. They had bigger and stronger ships

### **Why did the Portuguese lose control of the coast by AD 1700?**

#### **Why did Portuguese rule collapse by AD 1700?**

1. They had few officials to control the coast
2. Even the few were dishonest and corrupt

3. Portugal was a small and poor country
4. The outbreaks of frequent revolts against the Portuguese
5. The arrival of more powerful powers like the Dutch, British etc
6. Lack of manpower for overseas territories
7. The tropical climate was unfavourable to the Portuguese
8. The coast was too wide to be effectively ruled i.e. approx 2000 miles
9. The union of Spain and Portugal between 1580 – 1640 weakened her further
10. The Turks and Turkish pirates always raided Portuguese settlements
11. The Portuguese failed to win the support of the local Africans; no friendship with locals
12. Communication between Portugal and the East African coast was another problem
13. Portugal and Goa were too far hence help couldn't be got easily in case of any problem
14. The Portuguese were ruthless and arrogant hence hated
15. Language barrier
16. They suffered from tropical disease e.g. malaria etc
17. Malindi withdrew her support to the Portuguese
18. There were religious differences i.e. between Christianity and Islam
19. The local people hated them for disrupting trade
20. Persia and Oman broke free from Portugal
21. Persia and Oman assisted the coastal people to throw out the Portuguese
22. In 1698 Mombasa, the Portuguese stronghold fell to an army from Oman

### **How did the Portuguese administer the East African coast?**

### **Explain the Portuguese rule at the coast of East Africa 1510 – 1698**

1. After the final conquest of East Africa, Alfonso d'Albuquerque the Portuguese viceroy in India

2. Made Goa his headquarters
3. While Sofala in Mozambique was made the regional headquarter
4. It was under a captain who took his order from the viceroy at Goa
5. Cape Delgado was made the midpoint of the East Africa possession
6. The area north of cape Delgado was under one captain stationed at Malindi
7. While the captain of the southern area was stationed at Mozambique
8. In the subsequent years Mombasa came to have its own captain
9. The captains were answerable to the viceroy in Goa
10. They controlled import duties
11. They also controlled tributes from the local leaders
12. They also collected export duties
13. They also suppressed any resistance and rebellion
14. They also maintained law and order
15. They used divide and rule policy
16. Hence dividing states against states i.e. they allied with Malindi against
17. Where indirect rule failed they used direct rule
18. Their rule was dictatorial, tyrannical and brutal
19. This made them be hated hence constant rebellions by the Arabs and Swahilis
20. They employed corrupt officials who embezzled all the collected dues
21. They used military commanders as administrators
22. At times they imported hard core criminals from Portugal as their administrators
23. Through building forts and garrisons
24. E.g. they constructed Fort Jesus in Mombasa in 1592 to strengthen their power
25. Discriminated and isolated themselves from the locals to strengthen their position
26. The coastal people hated them and nicknamed them “Aftri”
27. There were constant rebellion in a bid to overthrow them

28. Discouraged trade in slaves and ivory, encouraging only gold trade
29. Smuggling and looting of gold and other valuable property was common
30. Charging annual tributes and taxes
31. People were flogged for failure to pay tax
32. Kept the coastal people in absolute poverty
33. Tried to spread Christianity but failed
34. Generally life under the Portuguese was unproductive, oppressive and disappointing

**What problems/ obstacles did the Portuguese meet in their administration of the coast?**

**Why were there numerous resistances during their rule at the coast?**

**What challenges did the Portuguese face at the coast of East Africa?**

1. The Portuguese controlled the coast for close to 200 years
2. The problems were political, economical and social
3. Constant resistance from the coastal towns like Mombasa
4. In 1528 Mombasa rebelled but it was quelled and the town was ruined
5. Portugal was a small and poor country/ lack of funds
6. Hence the administration of the scattered settlements became difficult
7. Portuguese officials were dishonest and corrupt and kept the money from taxes to themselves
8. They lacked enough ships to control the coast
9. They were hated by the coastal people because of their greed, arrogance, poor relations
10. Only Malindi was friendly to the Portuguese but she became unpopular
11. She was later forced to withdraw her support to the Portuguese
12. The union of Spain and Portugal between 1580 -1640 weakened her further

13. They were always disturbed by their traditional; enemies the Arabs and Turks
14. They wanted to support Muslim brothers at the coast
15. The Turkish pirates always raided Portuguese settlements e.g. Amir, Ali Bey
16. The Segeju and Zimba cannibals from the Zambezi valley devastated Kilwa, Mailindi and Mombasa
17. Harsh climatic conditions
18. Lack of manpower for the control of the vast area
19. Language barrier
20. They were attacked by tropical diseases e.g. malaria, small pox
21. The coast was too wide to be effectively ruled i.e. approx. 2000 miles
22. Communication between Portugal and the East African coast was another problem
23. Portugal and Goa were too far hence couldn't be got easily in case of any problem
24. The Portuguese failed to win the support of the local Africans, no friendship with locals
25. There were religious difference i.e. between Christianity and Islam
26. Persia and Oman assisted the coastal people to throw out the Portuguese
27. The arrival of more powerful powers like the Dutch, British etc/ rivalry with other European countries.
28. Shortages in medical, food and water etc
29. Lack of transport and communication

**What were the effects of Portuguese rule on the coastal people?**

1. The Portuguese controlled the coast for close to 200 years
2. Most of the effects were negative

3. Displaced the Moslem Arabs at the coast
4. Broke the Moslem monopoly of the India ocean trade
5. Contributed to the decline of the coastal trade e.g. in gold, ivory and slave due to wars
6. Most of the coastal towns declined e.g. Mombasa and Kilwa and others decayed e.g. Gedi
7. They looted the coastal towns and left them in ruins
8. Meanwhile some towns were burnt or destroyed e.g. Mombasa and Kilwa
9. Their divide and rule worsened the disunity among the coastal people
10. Their raids on the coast resulted into the destruction of crops
11. And loss of property e.g. in Kilwa and Mombasa
12. Famine was also experienced
13. Portuguese agents were brutal, inefficient and corrupt
14. Caused several rebellions at the coast
15. They brutalized the coastal people
16. Their brutality led to loss of lives
17. Heavy taxes were imposed on people
18. The heavy taxes and corruption resulted in poverty/ impoverished the coastal people
19. Their presence at the coast increased insecurity
20. Led to interruption of the coastal culture
21. Hated and called Aftri (devils) by the coastal people
22. Africans were subjected to forced labour in the construction of the forts
23. They were discriminative i.e. they built their own churches and brought their own priest
24. Brought new food crops and fruits e.g. cassava, maize, pineapples and papaws
25. Added few words to Swahili language e.g. mesa and pesa
26. Introduced a number of games like playing cards
27. Encouraged the used of cow dung as soil fertilizers
28. Improved on the building of ships at the coast

29. New architecture i.e. use of bricks
30. Introduced Christianity though it failed to spread
31. Built fort Jesus which became a tourist site
32. Established strong links between East Africa and the outside world
33. Encouraged the coming of many Indians
34. Strengthened diplomatic ties with India by making Goa their headquarter
35. Led to the arrival of more traders from European countries like Britain, Holland etc

### **TOPIC 3**

#### **SEYYI SAID'S RULE ON THE COAST**

**Why did Seyyid Said transfer his capital from Oman to Zanzibar in 1849?**

**Why did Said bin Sultan transfer his headquarters to the East African coast in 1840?**

1. Seyyid said was a prince of Oman born in 1791 in Muscat
2. He came to power in 1804 and transferred his capital in 1840
3. He had a desire to build wealth for himself he once said- he was nothing but a merchant
4. He hoped to get slaves to work on his clove plantations
5. Wanted to introduce the growing of cloves
6. Zanzibar had fertile soils for clove growing
7. East Africa had plenty of natural resources like ivory, slaves, gold etc than Oman

8. The fertile soils at the coast
9. He was running away from political problems at home/ killed his cousin
10. The strategic location of Zanzibar as a market for goods
11. Zanzibar had better climatic conditions than Oman
12. Desire to gain prestige and popularity as a ruler of two empires i.e. Oman and Zanzibar
13. Zanzibar had fresh water sweet for drinking
14. Zanzibar was more royal to his rule than Oman
15. He wanted to end the Mazaria – Busaidi dynastic conflicts
16. He wanted to effectively control his East Africa coastal dominion
17. Check on the sea pirates who made trade across the Indian ocean almost impossible
18. Hospitality of some coastal towns e.g. Malindi and Pemba
19. Zanzibar had a security advantage because it was an island
20. Religious persecution in Oman by that time
21. Zanzibar central trade position was ideal for the control of inland trade
22. Wanted to control the East African trade in slaves and ivory which was already developed

**Explain the causes of the Mazaria (Mazrui) – Busaidi conflicts**

1. The conflicts were sparked off by the failure of the Mazrui governors of Mombasa to recognize the rule of the Busaidi who had taken over control of the Oman Empire.
2. The Oman Arabs under the Busaidi family wanted to control the Indian ocean trade
3. The Mazrui also wanted to control the same trade hence conflict
4. The coastal governors wanted to be independent after chasing away the Portuguese
5. Mombasa under the Mazrui governors declared herself independent of Oman rule and this had to be challenged by the Busaidi rulers
6. The coastal governors hated the corruption and the ruthlessness of the Oman rulers (Liwalis) that had been appointed to administer the coast

7. The coastal people also hated the high taxes imposed on them by Oman rulers
8. The Mazrui rulers believed that they were the rightful rulers of Mombasa for even that the Portuguese had found them rulers of this town
9. However the Busaidi maintained they had the right to govern the coast as compensation for liberating from Portuguese oppression
10. The Busaidi wanted to use the favourable coastal climate for agriculture. This could only be done after the defeat of the Mazrui rulers
11. The Mazrui had a constant supply of manpower from Nyika who boasted their morale
12. However, these conflicts would not have risen had the Oman rulers been strong and effective in their administration.
13. i.e. they were preoccupied with enemies in Arabia and pirates at sea
14. Mombasa had remained rebellious for independence. Oman rulers wanted to crush them to stop other towns from rebelling
15. Activities of Seyyid Said catalyzed the conflicts
16. However, later together with the support of the British he managed to bring the coastal struggles to an end.

**Describe the course of the conflicts between 1741 – 1840**

1. In 1698, Fort Jesus fell in the hands of the Oman Arabs, after chasing away the Portuguese
2. In 1728, the Portuguese attempted to recapture Mombasa, but they were evicted with the help of the Oman
3. In 1739 the Oman Yoruba ruler replaced the governor of Mombasa with a new one Muhammad Uthman Al Mazrui
4. The new Busaidi dynasty took power in Oman and the governor of Mombasa renounced the new ruler of Oman Ahmed Ibn Said
5. In 1741, the conflict begun after Yorubi Sultan of Oman appointed Mohammed Ibin Uthman from the Mazrui family, to be the governor of Mombasa. He was expected to be royal to the Oman ruler

6. However, after the death of Saif Ibin Sultan of the Yorubi family, the Busaidi family took over power. They therefore became the rulers of the Oman Empire and a new sultan Ahmad Ibin said was installed.
7. The Mazrui governors at the coast, including Mohammed Ibin Uthman of Mombasa refused to recognize his (Ahmad Ibin Said's) administration and declared themselves independent. To them, the Busaidi family was not the right family from where Oman rulers were supposed to come
8. What Ahmad Said did was to open up war against the Mazrui. In the chaos that followed, Mohammed Ibin Uthman the governor of Mombasa was murdered in cold blood and this greatly annoyed the Mazrui family.
9. When Ali Ibin Uthman, a brother to the murdered governor took over power as the ruler of Mombasa, he was determined to fight the Oman Arabs up to the bitter end.
10. He continued with the expansion of the Mazrui influence on the coast and by 1807, the Mazrui territory stretched from Pangani to Malindi with exception of Kilwa that was too royal to the Oman rulers
11. In 1807, Mazrui conquered Pate but failed to conquer Lamu
12. In 1814 the Mazrui governor appealed to the British for aid. However, by the time he did this, the British had already started helping his rival, Sayyid Said – the new ruler of Oman.
13. With the coming of Sayyid Said to power, the tides began to change against the Mazrui. He came with a lot of determination to destroy the Mazrui influence on the coast, which his predecessors had failed.
14. In 1817, he freed Pate and ordered all her subjects not to trade with Mombasa. He ordered Zanzibar to liberate Pemba and Brava from Mazrui governors.
15. In 1822, he attacked Pemba and Brava drove out the Mazrui governors
16. In 1824, Owen then declared a British protectorate over mombasa
17. In 1827, he personally commanded the forces that bombarded Mombasa and almost brought the Mazrui self- rule to an end
18. However, when he went back to his capital (Muscat) the problems rose again, he was forced to come back in 1829, but again failed to defeat the Mazrui who had enlisted the Nyika in their struggle against the Oman Arabs.

19. Finally, the Mazrui were defeated by Sayyid Said's son – Khalid who managed to capture the governor and some members of his family in Fort Jesus and threw them in Indian ocean.
20. In 1837, he tricked others and took them to the Persian Gulf where he starved them to death. This ended the longtime conflict between the Mazrui and Busaidi families.
21. The coast was once again brought under one ruler – Sayyid Said. Three years later (1840), Sayyid Said decided to move his capital from Muscat to Zanzibar to effectively control and administer the coast.
22. He enlisted the support of his new – found friends – the British to strengthen his military position so as to be able to rule the coast and Oman effectively.

### **How did Seyyid Said settle the Mazrui conflicts?**

1. He was born in 1791 at Muscat.
2. He was a prince of the ruling family, came to power in 1806
3. His early years were faced with many problems among which were the Busaidi – Mazrui conflicts. He tried to solve the conflicts in the following way
4. In 1822, the Moresby treaty was signed to stop the sending of slaves outside Oman and East Africa.
5. British ships of war were allowed to search for suspected Arab dhows
6. In 1824, a force was sent to wipe out Mazrui but they found a British flag at Mombasa
7. In 1827, Seyyid Said led another force and forced the Mazrui to submit
8. After Seyyid Said withdrawal, trouble broke out in 1829, he returned and failed
9. In 1837, Seyyid Said invited the leading Mazrui and arrested them
10. The rebels were drowned
11. And others sent to exile
12. In 1840, Seyyid Said made an alliance with the British to strengthen his military position so as to be able to control East Africa and Oman
13. Seyyid Said used his power and tactics to capture Fort Jesus arrested and deported the remaining Mazrui

**What effects did Seyyid Said's rule have on East Africa?**

**Why is he remembered in the history of East Africa?**

**What were the effects of his administration on the coastal peoples?**

**Describe the political, social and economic development of Zanzibar during his rule**

1. The effects were political, economic and social
2. Economically, he built the economy through establishing large plantations of clove and coconut
3. Also encouraged his subjects to grow cloves
4. Zanzibar became the world's largest producer of cloves (4/5 of the total world production)
5. Africans in Zanzibar lost fertile lands to the Arabs for clove farms
6. He used slave labour to work on his farms
7. Hence he encouraged slave trade leading to depopulation
8. He transformed Zanzibar into a strategic market
9. He made Zanzibar an international port, handling both imports and exports
10. Zanzibar became the principle slave market on the East African coast
11. He signed commercial treaties with European countries e.g. USA (1833), Britain (1839) France (1844)
12. Increased trade on the coast
13. Signed treaties with interior chiefs e.g. Fundikira and Mirambo
14. He fought the sea pirates making the Indian ocean secure
15. He collected customs duties that enriched Zanzibar,s economy
16. He organized personal trade caravans into the interior
17. Introduced a monetary system e.g. copper currency
18. He also encouraged the use of Indian currency (Rupees) instead of barter trade
19. Invited Indian Banyans to work in his treasury.
20. He employed them as his commercial advisers and tax collectors

21. He introduced a system of taxing all inputs and exports as a way of raising revenue
22. The Banyans also financed caravans inland
23. Africans were displaced (lost land) to give way to his clove farms
24. He attracted foreigners to Zanzibar hence increased trade e.g. Germans, British, French
25. The trade items were ivory, hides and skins
26. He created market centers among African chiefdoms
27. He ended Mazrui/ Busaidi conflicts hence peace that attracted more traders
28. He encouraged Arab and Swahili penetration into the interior
29. Politically he ushered in a period of peace
30. He united the coastal towns
31. He gave security to the coastal towns through creating a strong army
32. Socially he opened up Koran schools as centre of learning
33. Encouraged the spread of the Arabic and Swahili cultures and language
34. Encouraged the spread of Islam at the coast
35. Built mosques as places of worship
36. Built Koranic schools as centre of learning
37. Encouraged Arabic architecture
38. Helped to end slave trade in the Hamerton treaty of 1845
39. Unfortunately he died in 1856.

**What were the effects of Zanzibar's trade (Seyyid Said) on the people of mainland Tanzania?**

1. There was depopulation due to slave raids
2. Slave raids disrupted families/ societies
3. Local craft industries declined as skilled men were enslaved
4. Wars and raids became rampant

5. Some people built kingdoms for themselves e.g. Mirambo, Fundikira etc
6. Islam was spread inland
7. Kiswahili was spread inland
8. Arabic way of life spread inland e.g. way of dressing, eating, architecture
9. Salve trade routes developed into proper communication lines e.g. railways and roads
10. Trading centres developed into towns e.g. Tabora and Ujiji
11. There were intermarriages inland
12. Some African chiefs became rich e.g. Mirambo, Tippu Tip, Fundikira
13. Seyyid Said influence was felt inland e.g. the red flag that followed caravans
14. The mainland was linked to the coast and the outside world
15. The Nyamwezi and Yao became major trading partners with the Zanzibaris
16. New crops were introduced inland e.g. rice
17. Some Africans changed their economic way of life from agriculture to commerce

## **TOPIC 4**

### **MIGRATIONS IN EAST AFRCIA**

#### **What is meant by the term “Bantu”?**

1. It refers to a group of people with a common root word “Ntu”
2. They belong to the Negroid race
3. They are some of the earliest inhabitants of East Africa
4. Origin not clear
5. Believed to have originated from the areas of West Africa
6. Before moving to Congo which became their dispersal point

7. Left Katanga about 2000 years ago
8. They are the largest group of people (over 75%)
9. They include interlacustrine, Highland, Northern and Southern Bantu
10. Others went to central Africa, south Africa

### **Why did the Bantu migrate into East Africa?**

1. The reasons for their migration are not clear
2. Probably moved in search of fertile soils for agriculture
3. Development of new skills and techniques like iron working
4. Increase in population in their cradle land
5. Internal conflicts e.g. succession disputes, family quarrels over land etc
6. External attacks from their neighbours e.g. Nilotics and Pygmies
7. Drought
8. Famine
9. Diseases e.g. small pox, malaria, sleeping sickness
10. Floods

## **Describe the course/ Bantu migration and settlement into East Africa**

### **Describe the major migrations of the Bantu into East Africa before 1800**

1. Believed to have probably come from Niger – Congo basin or from Cameroon region about 2000 years
2. Entered East Africa in groups of family/ clan groups and did not settle in one place
3. Their migration were gradual and slow
4. Entered East Africa in four different groups i.e. the western Bantu, the central and Northern Tanzania Bantu, the coastal and highland Bantu, the southern Tanzania Bantu
5. Their contacts were either peaceful or hostile
6. The first group to enter East Africa was of the western Bantu/ interlacustrine Bantu
7. They entered between lake Albert and lake Edward area
8. Settled around lake region of East Africa (George, Albert, Edward and Victoria)
9. Their migration is believed to have taken place between 1000 and 1300 AD
10. The Bantu in this group were basically agriculturists and a bit pastoralist
11. They established large and flourishing communities around this region
12. Examples include Ganda, Soga, Nkore, Rwanda, Toro, Nyoro, Kiga
13. Other Bantu in this group moved to western Kenya and gave birth to the Gisu and Luyia
14. The Chwezi later took control of their area and ruled them and other related people
15. The second major wave moved between south of lake Victoria and north of lake Tanganyika
16. They settled on the central Tanganyika plateau
17. They include the Sukuma, Nyamwezi, Gogo, Bena, Zinza and Ha among others
18. Their migration is believed to have taken place between 1000 and 1300AD
19. They were initially farmers, but with time some changed to a semi pastoral life
20. Some crossed the Tanzania plateau and reached Taita hills around 1300AD
21. The Chagga, Pare and Taita decided to settle around these hills permanently

22. The Pokomo, Giryama, Segeju and Nyika moved northwards along the coast to Shungwaya
23. At Shungwaya, there was another dispersal due to pressure from the Galla
24. The Nyika group moved southward along the coast
25. These came to be known as the coastal and highland Bantu
26. The Kamba, Chuka, Kikuyu and Embu moved to the Kenyan highlands
27. And they became known as the highland Bantu
28. Their migration was however curtailed by the Masai and the Kamba
29. The coastal and highland Bantu are also referred to as the eastern Bantu
30. The southern Tanzania Bantu are fourth group
31. They used the route between L.Malawi and L. Tanganyika and settled in southern Tanzania
32. They are believed to have come from central Africa
33. Their migration is believed to have taken place between 1000 -1300 AD
34. They include people like the Hehe, Sangu, Bena, Ngindo, Makonde, Yao, Meru, Zaromo
35. They had at first settled at the coast where they had mixed with the Khoisan
36. Lastly in 1840s, the Ngoni entered East Africa from south Africa
37. Around 1840, another group of Bantu moved into East Africa

**Describe the migration and settlement of the Eastern Bantu**

**Describe the migration and settlement of the Coastal and Highland Bantu**

1. They were part of the Bantu speaking people of East Africa
2. Their migration and origins are still unclear among historians
3. Probably they came from southern Congo or west Africa
4. Information about their history is obtained from linguistic and oral studies
5. Their migration was gradual and seasonal i.e. spread over a long time
6. They entered East Africa under different groups and clans

7. Believe to have entered by the first millennium i.e. 1000AD
8. They entered East Africa through the south western part of Tanganyika
9. They crossed the dry Tanganyika plateau between 1000 and 1300 AD
10. This resulted into eastwards movements up to Taita hills
11. Taita became their dispersal point
12. The Pare, Chagga, Taita, Shambaa, Duruma, Ngweno settled around Taita and Kilimanjaro hills
13. The Pokomo, Giryama, Segeju and Nyika moved northwards along the coast to Shungwaya
14. At Shungwaya, there was another dispersal due to pressure from the Galla
15. The Nyika group moved southward along the coast
16. These came to be known as the coastal and highland Bantu
17. The Kamba, Chuka, Kikuyu and Embu moved to the Kenyan highlands
18. And they became known as the highland Bantu
19. Population pressure among the highland Bantu especially the Kikuyu caused further expansion.
20. Their migration was however curtailed by the Masai and the Kamba
21. The eastern Bantu migration continued up to 1850s
22. Some groups remained on and close to the coast
23. Others mixed with other groups e.g. with the coastal Arabs and formed a strong Swahili culture
24. The coastal and highland Bantu are also referred to as the eastern Bantu

**Describe the migration and settlements of the western Bantu into East Africa between 1000 -1400AD**

1. One of the Bantu speaking people who settled in East Africa
2. Also called interlacustrine Bantu
3. Their migration and origins are still unclear among historians
4. But probably come from Niger – Congo or West Africa

5. This was probably about 2000 years ago
6. Information about their history is obtained from linguistic and oral studies
7. Their migration was gradual and seasonal i.e. spread over a long time
8. They entered East Africa between lake Albert and lake Edward between 1000 -1400 AD
9. And settled within lakes Albert, Victoria, Edward, Kivu and Kioga
10. They moved in groups of either clan, family or tribes
11. Their contacts were either peaceful or hostile
12. Those who settled in the eastern and south of lake Albert included the Banyoro and Batoro
13. West of lake Victoria included some Baganda and Banyankore
14. Those who settled in the north of the same lake were the Basoga
15. Other Bantu in this group moved to the Eastern Uganda like Bagisu, Samia and Banyole
16. Some moved eastwards along the northern shore of lake Victoria into western Kenya
17. These gave birth to the Gisu and Luyia who settled around Mumias area
18. Some moved from western Uganda to north western Tanzania and settled at Bukoba and Karagwe
19. They include the Bahinda

### **What were the effects of the Bantu migration in East Africa?**

1. Led to increase in population
2. Introduced iron working and use of iron tools
3. Introduced new food crops e.g. bananas, beans, yams etc
4. The local people adopted a settled life
5. Introduced new farming methods e.g. shift cultivation, mulching, irrigation, zero grazing
6. Bantu new languages were introduced e.g. Ganda, Soga and Toro
7. They absorbed most of the non Bantu they met marking them lose their identity
8. They displaced those who refused to be absorbed

9. Led to intermarriages with the local people
10. Led to the birth of new tribes e.g. Ganda, Luyia, Soga, Nkore etc
11. They introduced a centralized system of administration
12. Led to distraction of property/ villages
13. Increased insecurity in the area resulting into loss of lives
14. Introduced new fighting tactics e.g. cow horn formation by the Ngoni
15. New fighting weapons were introduced e.g. short stabbing, cow shields by the Ngoni
16. Led to development of trade e.g. barter trade and slave trade
17. They increased slave trade e.g. the Ngoni
18. Introduced the Bantu traditional religion

### **Describe the origins of the Ngoni**

#### **Who were the Ngoni?**

1. The Ngoni are Nguni Bantu speaking people
2. They originally lived in South – Eastern Africa, in Natal
3. They were the last group of Bantu to enter East Africa through southern Tanganyika
4. Their migration was sparked off by the expansionist wars of Zulu
5. Under Shaka Zulu in 1820s
6. This was the Mfecane / Dificane era
7. They form the last batch of the Bantu migrants into East Africa
8. They spoke a language called Nguni
9. They are close relatives of the Ndwandwe
10. They were farmers and practiced a bit of pastoralism
11. They were also a warrior society that lived on plundering, looting and terrorizing their neighbors
12. They also had a centralized administration

13. They moved northwards through central Africa and finally settled southern and central Tanzania
14. During their movement they absorbed many people on the way. E.g. Shona, Cewa, Songa
15. They were led by their good leaders like Zwangendaba, Maputo and Zulu Gama
16. By the time they reached Tanganyika around 1840s their number had grown big

### **Why did the Ngoni leave their homeland?**

#### **Explain the cause of the Ngoni migration into East Africa**

1. The Ngoni are Nguni Bantu speaking people who lived in S. Africa (Natal)
2. It was primarily caused by Shaka's expansionist wars in 1820s
3. He created a period of wars that forced many people to migrate
4. This was the time trouble called Mfecane
5. There were also civil wars in Zulu land
6. Population pressure
7. Internal conflicts among themselves
8. Need for fertile areas for agriculture since they were farmers
9. The influence of good leaders like Zwangengaba Maputo and Zulu Gama
10. Diseases like small pox, malaria and sleeping sickness
11. Love for adventure
12. Due to land shortage caused by the Boer invasion
13. The ruthless army training started by Shaka made the Ngoni escape
14. Need for pastures and water for their animals
15. Overstocking
16. Due to outbreak of famine
17. The need to loot and increase on their herds
18. The hostile climate/ tired of extreme winters

## **Describe the Ngoni migration and settlement in East Africa**

1. The migration started in South Africa among the Bantu in South east Africa
2. It was sparked off by Shaka expansionist wars
3. This was the Mfecane era
4. There were several waves of migration from South Africa but two groups came to East Africa
5. The first and largest group was led by Nduna Zwangendaba.
6. Pushing northwards they moved through Central Africa, destroying the settled Shona communities in 1831
7. Crossed River Zambezi on the 19<sup>th</sup> Nov 1835
8. Travelled through Malawi and finally settled around Ufipa plateau in 1840
9. This was after destroying the small disorganized Fipa communities
10. Settled around Fipa because the soils were fertile and the people easy to conquer
11. In 1848, Zwangendaba died and owing to power struggle his group split into five small groups
12. Three of them moved southwards settling in present day Malawi and Zambia
13. Two of the groups remained in East Africa (the Tuta and Gwangara Ngoni)
14. The Tuta Ngoni moved northwards into the land of the Holoholo
15. But were driven out, forcing them to settle in Northeastern Tanzania
16. From here they frequently raided trade routes and the Nyamwezi
17. This group took the young Mirambo captive (in Bugomba)
18. From Ufipa the Gwangara moved eastwards
19. Under the leadership of Zulu Gama, they destroyed Hehe and Sangu settlements
20. Meanwhile the second and smaller group led by Maputo (Maseko Ngoni)
21. Had reached East Africa travelling up the Eastern side of L. Nyasa until they reached Songea
22. Where they settled absorbing the people they had found there – the Yao

23. 1860, the Gwangara Ngoni settled in Songea after driving away the Maseko
24. Maputo led his people back across Ruvuma and finally settled in South west Malawi
25. Another group of the Maseko Ngoni fled northwards to Morogoro where they became known as the Mbuga Ngoni
26. Other scattered to Tunduru, Masaai and Newale

**Why were the Ngoni successful in their invasion of East Africa?**

**Why were the Ngoni successful in conquering southern Tanzania?**

**Explain the reasons for the Ngoni success in East Africa.**

1. They captured young men whom they transformed into warriors
2. They also took women as wives, which swelled their numbers
3. They had an outstanding military organization inherited from Shaka
4. They divided their army into fighting units called impis
5. Had an age set system as the basis of military regiments
6. Had superior weapons e.g. Assegai (short stabbing spear) and large cowhide shields
7. Had superior tactics of attacking their enemies like the cow- horn formation
8. They also preferred fighting in the open and barefooted which facilitated mobility
9. The Ngoni also used surprise attacks
10. Most of the Ngoni enemies were weak and small societies
11. The Ngoni were more determined than their counterparts
12. The societies they confronted were small and quite weak organizationally
13. These societies were disunited and often at war with each other
14. Used scorched earth policy on those who tried to resist them e.g. burning villages, food stores etc
15. The Ngoni fighters were professionally trained and free of any work
16. The Ngoni had great experience in large scale warfare

17. Kept the morale of the army high by promising them rewards after victory
18. The Ngoni fighters were also loyal and united under their leaders and commanders
19. Had strong military leaders e.g. Zwangendaba, Zulugama, Maputo
20. They were not affected by famine – they always looted for food wherever they passed
21. The long march from South Africa gave them military discipline and strong endurance
22. The East African communities had been affected by slave and long distance trade

**How did their migration and settlement affect the people of East Africa?**

**How did they influence events in Tanganyika by 1845?**

1. Creation of a period of wars in previously peaceful areas
2. E.g. the settled Fipa communities were destroyed and devastated
3. It also led to massive loss of lives
4. They conquered people who they absorbed into their ranks
5. Most of them adopted the Ngoni culture and language / loss of cultures
6. Ngoni language influenced local language
7. There was also massive destruction of property
8. Burning of villages and general breakdown of society
9. This resulted into a period of insecurity, turmoil and chaos
10. There was increased slave raids causing untold suffering and bloodshed
11. Heavy depopulation especially in southern Tanzania
12. Famine broke up in many societies due to lack of agriculture
13. A lot of cattle was looted
14. The invasion of long distance trade
15. The Tuta Ngoni for example disrupted trade caravans along the central route
16. This resulted into poverty, as the wars would not allow trade to flourish

17. Many people copied the Ngoni military barracks
18. Their weapons were also adopted e.g. assegai, shields, sandals
19. Their weaponry and tactics were later used against them
20. Also some societies reorganized themselves to resist the Ngoni
21. E.g. chief Mwakawangu united the Sangu vs. the Ngoni in 1850s
22. His successor Merere was able to control trade in the area and carried out extensive conquest in 1860s and 1870s
23. The Holoholo learnt their military tactics and used them to defeat them
24. Mirambo used them to build a strong military Nyamwezi empire
25. The hehe under Munyugumba created a strong centralized state
26. And he was able to defeat the Bena and the Sangu
27. The Hehe were able to put up a strong resistance against the Germans
28. He also copied customs like putting on ornaments made of people's teeth
29. Their migration created a new generation of warlords and leaders
30. Like Nyungu Yamawe, Mirambo and Munyugumba.
31. Many tribes were detribalized
32. Led to the creation of Maviti groups of highway robbers
33. Mirambo used to build his Unyamwezi empire
34. Led to creation of Ruga – Ruga as mercenary force
35. Initially population increased
36. Intermarriages with the local people
37. Led to the displacement of people
38. Their mass movement also resulted into the spread of diseases

### **Why did the Plain Nilotes migrate into East Africa?**

1. The reasons for their migration are not clear but based on their way of life
2. Increase in population, which made them to search for bigger areas for settlement
3. Probably moved in search of fertile soils for agriculture especially the agricultural Masaai.
4. Prolonged seasons of drought
5. Running away from harsh climate
6. Epidemic diseases e.g. small pox, malaria, nagana, sleeping sickness in their areas.
7. Internal conflicts possibly over land, family quarrels etc
8. External attacks especially from the Cushites
9. Raids from the Galla
10. Love for adventure
11. Due to group influence
12. They were looking for water and fresh pastures for their animals
13. Their original homeland had a problem of overstocking
14. Famine could also have forced them to migrate

**Describe their migration and settlement into East Africa by 1800?**

1. These were a group of Nilotes who settled on the Plains of East Africa
2. This group includes tribes like the Masai, Iteso, Jie, Karamajong etc
3. Their migration is not clear
4. Most likely, they came from the northeast, probably the southern slopes of the Ethiopian highlands
5. From Ethiopia, they moved southwards and by 1000 AD, they had reached and settled in the north of Lake Rudolf in Kenya
6. Lake Rudolf became their dispersal point from where they spread into various directions

7. This was because of epidemics and diseases like Nagana, River blindness, tsetse flies.
8. They got divided into two major groups, the Teso – Masaai and Bari speakers
9. The Bari- speakers moved into the Sudan while the Teso-Masaai spread into East Africa
10. The Teso –Masaai split into three small groups, the Lotuko, the Massai, Karamajong and Teso
11. The Lotuko moved and finally settled in Sudan
12. The Masaai moved southwards and settled between Mt. Kenya, Kilimanjaro and Taita hills
13. From here, the Masaai expanded southwards along the rift valley source of water and pasture
14. The Iteso and Karamajong first settled on Mt. Moroto before the major dispersal during 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> centuries
15. Due to increase in population, the Iteso moved further southwards into eastern Uganda and western Kenya
16. In Uganda, the Iteso settled in present Soroti, Mbale, Kaberamaido and Kumi.
17. The Karamajong first moved south westwards from Mt. Moroto and moved westwards setting into the present day south and central Karamoja
18. The Dodoth and Jie moved northwards settling in modern Kotido
19. The Turkana first moved north – eastwards into present day Northern Kenya
20. But later turned south near Lake Turkana due to pressure from the Samburu

**How did they affect the life of the people among whom they settled?**

1. Increased wars and raids in east Africa
2. Loss of lives as a result of the wars
3. Resulting into conflicts between them and the Kikuyu, Kipsigis
4. They displaced people from their lands e.,g. Kamba, Kikuyu, Kipsigis
5. Established military control over societies e.g.the Masaai over the Chagga
6. Increased the population of East Africa
7. Massai conquered the Kalenjin and absorbed their culture

8. Took over control of other societies e.g. the Kalenjin
9. There were intermarriages resulting into the birth of new tribes
10. The Iteso intermarried with the Luo forming the Kuman
11. Intermarriages between the Ateker and Luo resulted into the Langi
12. Introduced the cattle keeping culture
13. This was adopted by many societies e.g. the Kamba , Kikuyu
14. They introduced short horned cows in East Africa
15. They copied cultivation from the Bantu e.g. the Masaai who became mixed farmers
16. They traded with their neighbours e.g. the Iteso bartered cereals with the Banyoro
17. The Kalenjin traded in iron articles for skin, butter, cattle from the Masaai
18. The idea of iron working was copied by the Cushites

### **What led to the Masaai migrations?**

1. The Masaai belong to the plain Nilotes
2. Originally occupied the area between Mt. Kenya and Lake Rudolf
3. Their migrations stretched between 1650 -1700
4. The Masaai were essentially pastoralists
5. They therefore moved in search of water and pasture
6. Overpopulation
7. Overstocking
8. They were an aggressive society
9. Need to raid cattle etc
10. Spirit of adventure
11. Natural calamities
12. E.g. drought, famine, diseases

### **What were the results of these migrations on the people of Kenya and Tanzania?**

1. Their migrations stretched through the rift valley up to Dodoma in present day Tanzania
2. They established control over a large area of central Kenya
3. As well as north central and Tanzania
4. Absorbed much of the Kalenjin culture and language
5. Soon the new regions became densely populated
6. They became the most powerful people on the plains of central Kenya and North Central and Tanzania
7. Fought and killed the Nandi in central Kenya
8. Raided their neighbours e.g. Chagga, Taita, Kamba etc for cattle
9. They were hostile to strangers in their land
10. During the 19<sup>th</sup> century civil wars broke out among the pastoral Masaai and Kwavi
11. This disrupted and weakened the Kwavi
12. Loss of cattle by the Kwavi led to starvation
13. The Kwavi were forced to disperse to safer areas
14. The Kwavi took to agriculture
15. The civil wars weakened the Masaai society itself
16. Contributing to depopulation
17. And the strengthening of the Nandi power
18. There were intermarriages between Masaai and local people
19. There was trade with neighbours e.g. Nandi, Kikuyu etc

### **Describe the migration and settlement of the Iteso from Karamojong in the 16<sup>th</sup> Century**

1. The Iteso are a branch of plain Nilotes called Jie, under the smaller group of the Ateker
2. They are related to the Turkan, Kumam, Masaai and Karamajong
3. It is assumed that these people came from southern Ethiopia or Sudan
4. Settled first in Karamoja where they lived with their Karamonj brothers for some time
5. However between 1562 they left Karamajongs, overstocking, lack of water and over population
6. They then moved southwards and established themselves on shores of lake Bisinia, Kumi and Soroti
7. It was from here that they acquired their name – Itesos
8. Due to more pressure, others moved to Eastern Uganda and western Kenya
9. Today they are settled in Kumi, Mbale, Tororo, Serere, Amuria, Katakwi, Kaberamaido and others are in Kenya

#### **What was the result of their migration?**

1. They contribute to the peopling of East Africa
2. They introduced new cultures in East Africa after their intermarriages with other people
3. They formed new intermarriages with other people
4. They formed new decentralized states in East Africa
5. They also introduced new tradition weapons with ritual attachment
6. They acquired new farming skills for the Bantu grew potatoes and G/nuts
7. They also promoted barter trade with the neighbours
8. As such they battered hides and skins, ivory and beads for what they lacked
9. They adopted some customs after they intermarried i.e. circumcision customs
10. They displaced many people as well
11. Still they caused security due their war like behavior in East Africa
12. Consequently they caused a lot of damages on life and property

### **Why did the Luo leave their homeland?**

### **Why did the Jonam leave their homeland?**

1. The Luo (Jonam) are group of people under the river – lake Nilotes
2. Moved from their land in Sudan during the late 15<sup>th</sup> century
3. The reasons for their migration are not clear / still debatable
4. Population pressure in their homeland
5. Led to the need for more land for settlement
6. Need for pastures and water since they were cattle keepers/ overstocking
7. Internal conflicts/misunderstandings/ civil wars
8. External conflicts/ attacks e.g. from the Dinka, Shilluk, Nuer
9. Natural calamities e.g. floods/ over flooding
10. Drought which led to the search for water
11. Famine
12. Animal diseases like Nagana, Rinder pest
13. Human diseases e.g. small pox, sleeping sickness, malaria
14. Soil exhaustion
15. Love for adventure/ exploration/ wandering
16. Group influence
17. Desire to export their political and cultural influence

## **Describe the Luo migration and settlement into East Africa up to 1850**

### **Describe the movement of the River Lake Nilotics in East Africa by 1800**

1. The Luo was a major group of the River- lake Nilotes / Nilotes settled around lakes and rivers
2. They originally settled around the shores of lake Rudolf and later the Bahr- el-Ghazel in the equatorial province
3. By 1400, they had started their journey from bahr –e- Ghazel and the equatorial province
4. The movement spread over a long period between AD 1000 and 1800 (slow and gradual)
5. They were moved in small family or clan groups
6. At times their movements were seasonal
7. They moved south wards following the Nile
8. They entered East Africa through Northern Uganda/ Nimule
9. Between 1480 and 1500, they had settled at Pubungu (Pakwach)
10. This later became their major dispersal point from where they spread to different directions
11. One group under Gikir and Tifool moved westwards and mixed with Sudanic Okebo lendu and Madi giving rise to the Alur people
12. A second group the Jo- Bito clan under Labongo moved southwards into Pawir (Chope) at the time when Bunyoro Kitara was disintegrating
13. This setup the Bito dynasty and sub dynasties in Busoga and Bukedi
14. Further movements occurred northwards, eastwards and north- eastwards into present day Acholi, Lango etc
15. Most prominent of the migrants at the time were the Labongo who intermarried with the Madi to give rise to the Acholi tribe
16. Those who moved to Kenya included the Joka- Jok, Jok-Owiny, Jok- Omolo and abasuba
17. Between 1500 and 1550 the Joka- jok pushed eastwards to Pubungu through Acholi Kaberamaido and some settled there
18. Some settled in Budama while others continued to Lamogi hills in western Kenya

19. Another group the Jok owiny, (jok aworwoth) moved from Pubungu and finally settled in Sigoma alego in the Nyanza region western Kenya
20. They were led by the fearless Owiny Singoma
21. Between 1550 and 1650 the Jok Omolo moved Northern Bunyoro through Busoga, Budama and also settled in Nyanza region
22. Abasuba, a group of refugees from the Ssesse Islands, Buganda, Busoga and Bugwere migrated between 1600 and 1800
23. Today they are represented by the jo-gem, jo-ugenya and jo- alega and mainly settled in southern Nyanza
24. The Luo who settled in Budama were known as the Jo-padhola (Adhola) under the Adola
25. These were often victims of the Masaai and Bunyole raiders
26. The group that finally settled in the Kavirondo Gulf and the Nyanza region became known the Kenya Luo (Ja-luo)

**What were the effects of their migration on the peoples of East Africa?**

1. There were intermarriages between the Luo and the local people leading to the birth of new tribes like the Alur, Langi, Japadhola, Acholi, Chope etc
2. The new tribes came with new languages like Alur, Japadhola, Langi, Kumam and Acholi
3. They also intermarried with the Bantu
4. They established themselves as chiefs over the local people
5. For example by 1700 small Luo dominated and centralized states had emerged in Acholi land
6. They traded with the new communities they met
7. Their coming resulted into loss of cultures and languages by the local people
8. For example in lango some of the Langi gave up their Ateker language for Luo language
9. The Abasuba also eventually took up the Luo language and customs
10. And the Abasuba copied some aspects of the Luo initiation rites like removing the sixth bottom teeth

11. Still some bantu speaking groups at Ayego were defeated and some were absorbed in the linguistic group
12. However in some areas the Luo lost their language and cultures e.g. in Bunyoro where they were completely bantunised
13. Led to the decline of Chwezi empire of Bunyoro – Kitara
14. As a result small independent states emerged e.g. Bunyoro, Busoga, Karagwe, Buganda, Ankole etc
15. They established the Bito dynasty which lasted for 4 – 5 centuries up to the 1967
16. Also Luo sub dynasties ruled over a large area in Busoga, Karagwe and western Kenya
17. There was heavy displacement of people e.g. in Bunyoro and Lango
18. Some of the displaced people of Bunyoro especially the Bahima had to migrate
19. They also drove away some of the Bantu groups from the Samia and the west of the lake
20. They introduced the idea of chiefdom (Rwothdom)
21. They introduced the idea of cattle keeping (short horned hampless zebu cattle)
22. This cattle culture spread to almost everywhere they settled i.e. Acholi land
23. They introduced pet names (empaako) e.g. Akiiki, Atwoki, Atenyi, Abwori, Amooti
24. Initiated the system of granting land to clans
25. Developed the system of royal burial sites for Abakama (kings) after removal of the jaw bone
26. Their arrival led to population increase in the areas where they settled
27. This resulted into land disputes
28. In Bunyoro they introduced new regalia like the royal drums, shields, royal fire
29. They introduced new types of crops like simsim, millet, sorghum and peas (any 2)
30. During their movement they led to inter-clan wars
31. The wars increased warfare and insecurity in the region
32. Leading to loss of lives and hence depopulation
33. A lot of property was also destroyed
34. Their wars led to the destruction of crops resulting into famine

**TOPIC 5**  
**INTERLACUSTRINE KINGDOMS**

**Describe the origins of Bunyoro Kitara Kingdom**

1. Bunyoro Kitara was one of the kingdoms in the interlacustrine region
2. The origins of this empire are not clear/ mythical
3. It was formed in 1350 AD by the Chwezi after the disappearance of the Batembuzi
4. The Tembuzi therefore were the first occupants of this kingdom
5. The founders of this kingdom (the Bachwezi) are believed to have come from North or North east
6. The Bachwezi were demi gods/ miraculous people
7. They are believed to have been either Cushites, Egyptians, Greeks or Portuguese
8. They moved southwards and settled in the interlacustrine region of East Africa
9. Their dynasty was founded by Ndahura a grandson of Isaza
10. At its peak the empire consisted of parts of Bunyoro, Toro, Ankole, Karagwe, Buganda, Rwanda, Burundi etc
11. Its capital was at Bigo Byamugenyi
12. The Chwezi rule lasted for four to five reigns after which it collapsed
13. Several independent states emerged from the ruins of Bunyoro- Kitara
14. Such kingdoms include Bunyoro, Toro, Ankole, Karagwe, Buganda, Wanga etc
15. Some of their independent states remained under Hima dynasty
16. While others came under the Luo Babiito dynasty or sub dynasties
17. Bunyoro kingdom that emerged under the Luo dynasty was a reduced state
18. Traditions in Bunyoro claim that Isingoma Mpuga Rukidi was the first of the Biito rulers

19. These Babiito were a group of the Luo who had moved southwards from the Sudan and settled at pawir (Chope) in the 15<sup>th</sup> Century
20. Slowly they came in contact with the Chwezi and the bantu subjects through intermarriages
21. The Babiito gave up their cultures for that of the Bachwezi
22. One tradition has it that the Chwezi invited the Luo to take over power after they had become unpopular
23. Another tradition has it that Luo militarily conquered the empire
24. By AD 1500 Bunyoro Kitara kingdom was much smaller covering nearly the present day Bunyoro (Hoima, Masindi and Kibale districts)

**Explain the contribution of the Temбузи to the history of Bunyoro Kitara kingdom**

1. They are believed to have been the first people to inhabit the interlacustrine region
2. Their origins are however obscure/ surrounded with myth and legend/ not clear
3. They were also called Abakama
4. Traditions suggest that the people who preceded the Chwezi lived during the time of creation
5. They were believed to be semi gods and able to perform miracles
6. Other traditions suggest that the temбузи fell from heaven and this is why they had miraculous powers
7. They could not die but just disappear or go back to heaven at the end of their earthly life
8. They established Bunyoro Kitara kingdom around lake Victoria
9. Their dynasty lasted four to five generations between 1250 – 1350
10. Their first ruler was Ruhanga (creator – God)
11. Ruhanga lived and was assisted by his brother Nkya
12. This tradition is common in western Uganda among the banyankole and Banyoro
13. Apparently Ruhanga had no son while Nkya had four

14. Kantu, Kairu, Kakama- Twale and Kahima
15. Kahima became the ancestor of herdsmen
16. Kairu became the ancestor of farmers
17. Kahama- Twale became the ancestor of rulers
18. Accordingly to traditions Ruhanga and Kantu were back to heaven
19. Leaving Kahama – Twale, to rule the early kingdom
20. Kahama- Twale later also disappeared and was succeeded by his son Baba
21. Baba was succeeded by Ngonzaki
22. Ngonzaki was succeeded by Isaza who is recorded as the last Tembuzi ruler
23. When Isaza disappeared, his gate keeper- Bukuku imposed himself as the ruler
24. However people refused to recognize him
25. Since they were gods, they are believed to have disappeared or went back to heaven
26. The Tembuzi were farmers, growing mainly cereals
27. They introduced a succession system in the region
28. They also kept animals
29. They slept in grass thatched huts
30. Believed to have introduced the belief in a super natural being
31. After the collapse of Tembuzi rule, the Chwezi took over the interlacustrine region

### **Who were the Bachwezi?**

#### **Explain the origins of the Bachwezi?**

1. Their origin is not clear
2. They were the successors to the Abatembuzi in Bunyoro
3. Most of what is known about them is derived from myths
4. Some historians claim they were Cushites or Galla people from Ethiopia

5. Others suggest they were possibly Greeks, Egyptians or Portuguese
6. Others further claim that they were Bantu speaking people
7. But unlike Tembuzi who were mythical, the Chwezi were real people
8. However they were regarded as semi- gods and performed miracles
9. People who entered Uganda through North or North east
10. They were tall, light skinned people
11. They are the ones who established Bunyoro Kitara
12. They are said to have been cattle keepers and kept long horned cattle
13. They established themselves with relative ease among the Bantu
14. They were great sportsmen and enjoyed wrestling and gymnastics, omweso, enziga
15. They are known by various names i.e. Chwezi, Tutsi, Hindu, Hima etc
16. They are people whose first leaders were Ndahura and the last Wamara
17. They wore cowhide sandals

**Explain the contribution of the Bachwezi to the history of the interlacustrine region**

1. The Chwezi or Bachwezi were the successors to the Abatembuzi
2. Their identity is not clear/ debatable
3. They are believed to have been demi gods and had super natural powers
4. Some historians believe that they were Galla, of a Cushities origin from Ethiopia
5. Others suggest they must have been Greeks, Portuguese or possibly Egyptians
6. They are variously referred to as Hima Tutsi, Hindu etc
7. Their first ruler was Karubumbi Ndahura
8. After the departure of the Tembuzi he reorganized and established the Chwezi empire
9. They established themselves with ease among the Bantu who inhabited this region
10. Ndahura was followed by Wamara who is recorded as the second and last Chwezi ruler

11. Introduced a central authority (centralized monarchy) instead of clan units
12. Introduced monarchical rule and administration was broken down into smaller units
13. Had a strong standing army
14. Bigobyamugenyi was their capital had fortified enclosures
15. The Omukama had a chain of government representatives, ruling over small sister states
16. Introduced palace officials, slave artisans, and royal women
17. Introduced a class system e.g. Bahima pastoralists and Iru farmers
18. The pastoralists ruled over the peasants
19. They were a pastoral group of people who prized long horned cattle
20. Their palaces had enclosures and ditches for defense purposes
21. Set up several palaces and earth works at Kibengo, Ntusi, Mubende etc
22. Omukama had a large army that fought with spears
23. Had royal regalia liken spears, stools, drums and crowns. (any 2)
24. Their culture flourished between 1350 – 1500
25. They also grew coffee and involved themselves in pottery
26. Wore cow hides sandals
27. Built grass- hatched huts smeared with cow dung and decorated inside
28. They were also great sportmens e.g. board game (omweso), enziga, riddles and wrestling
29. They were great hunters
30. Introduced a superior culture to that of the Tembuzi
31. Introduced earth work fortification
32. Introduced iron works
33. Introduced the construction of reed palaces
34. Introduced backcloth manufacture
35. Made beautiful pottery, shallow basins, jars, dishes
36. Introduced basket weaving

37. Introduced a culture of coffee cultivation for chewing
38. They believed in many gods
39. Had miraculous powers, could perform miracles and disappear when annoyed

**How were the Bachwezi organized between 1350 – 1500 AD?**

1. The Bachwezi were organized politically, economically and socially

**Politically**

2. Had a centralized monarchy
3. With the Omukama as its head (king)
4. And the capital at Bigobyamugenyi
5. Below the Omukama was a chain of chiefs ruling over provinces and districts
6. The Omukama appointed all the officials
7. He was the final judge/ court of appeal
8. Succession to the throne was hereditary
9. The Bachwezi ruler lived in reed palaces with palace officials, palace women and slave artisans
10. Their palaces had enclosures and ditches for defense purposes
11. Omukama had a large army that fought with spears
12. Had royal regalia like spears, stools, drums and crowns
13. These were symbols of power

**Economically**

14. They were a pastoral group of people who prized long horned cattle
15. They also grew coffee and grew coffee beans
16. Also involved themselves in pottery

17. Carried out backcloth manufacture
18. Made beautiful pottery, shallow basins jars, dishes
19. Introduced basket weaving
20. Salt mining was carried out
21. Iron working was also carried out
22. They were great hunters who used long spear
23. Carried out barter trade

### **Socially**

24. Religiously, they believed in many gods
25. Had miraculous powers could perform miracles and disappear when annoyed
26. Wore cow hide sandals
27. Built grass- thatched huts smeared with cow dung and decorated inside
28. They were also great sportsmen e.g. board game (omweso), enziga, riddles and wrestling

### **Explain Bunyoro Kitara's relationship with her neighbors up to 1850**

1. After the disintegration of Bunyoro Kitara empire, a new and smaller Bunyoro emerged
2. This smaller Bunyoro continued exerting a lot of pressure on her neighboring states
3. Her neighbors included Buganda, Busoga, Ankole, Karagwe, Lango, West Nile
4. It used to raid her neighbors e.g. Ankole, Toro, Busoga etc
5. Initially the raids resulted in Bunyoro's expanding her territory in those areas
6. Later these raids made her lose much territory and power to the neighbors
7. In the 16<sup>th</sup> century her raids in Buganda were repulsed, instead some parts of bunyoro fell to Buganda
8. In the 1650, Bunyoro attacked Karagwe but she was defeated
9. In the 18<sup>th</sup> century Kabaka Jjunju annexed Buddu from Bunyoro

10. Towards the end of 18th century she raided into Ankole but she was defeated
11. Bunyoro also lost the territory south of Katanga to Ntare IV
12. Between 1800 and 1840 Bunyoro continued to lose territories to Buganda e.g. Kooki, Mawogola and also to Ankole
13. After 1830 Toro and Bunyoro became enemies (poor relationship)
14. Bunyoro traded with Acholi Alur Langi, Buganda and Iteso etc
15. She recruited mercenaries from Langi, Buganda and Iteso
16. There were intermarriages with her northern neighbor e.g. Lango, Alur and Acholi
17. Later on, when the British showed up, most of Bunyoro neighbors joined them (the British) to fight her
18. This marked the end of her power and glory

### **Why did the Bachwezi empire decline?**

### **Why did Bunyoro Kitara empire decline during the 16<sup>th</sup> century?**

1. It's not clear why the empire declined and finally collapsed
2. But the empire collapsed at the beginning of the 16<sup>th</sup> century
3. The empire had grown too large in size to be effectively administered
4. There was resistance from the local people like the Bantu
5. Civil wars among themselves caused by princes
6. Voluntary departure to the south led by princes
7. Rampant cattle disease like Nagana increasing epidemics e.g. small pox that caused migrations
8. The death of Bihogo the cherished cow of one of the princes, the darling cow, misfortunes
9. The soothsayers interpreted it to mean the end of the empire
10. Outbreak of famine caused by locust invasion
11. The Luo invasion also weakened the Chwezi
12. The death of Wamara resulting into poor administration/ lack of leadership after Wamara

13. The rulers were oppressive and therefore hated by their subjects
14. Loss of popularity when people realized that they were ordinary human beings not demi gods
15. The kingdom was not well organized leaders paid less attention to their subjects
16. Militarily weak/ lack of formidable army
17. Lack of a strong economy/ decline of Bunyoro's economy

**Explain the contribution of the Babito/ Luo Bito to the history of Bunyoro Kitara.**

1. The Babito are a branch of Luo speaking Nilotic immigrants
2. They travelled up the Nile from Southern Sudan (Bahr- es- Ghazel) around the 15<sup>th</sup> century
3. They arrived in Bunyoro at the beginning of the 16<sup>th</sup> century
4. After catalyzing the fall of the Chwezi empire, the Luo set up Bito dynasty
5. This lasted and ruled Bunyoro up to 1967 when Obote abolished kingdoms
6. Rukidi was believed to be a brother of Kato Kimera the founder of Buganda
7. The Luo- Bito found the Chwezi culture superior and Rukidi mpuga had to be trained in the Chwezi rituals and practices of kingship
8. The Bito kings and officials copied the Chwezi style of building and staying in reed palaces
9. They also copied some of their regalia like drums like Kasumba and Nyaleba
10. They set up related Bito dynasties in Buganda, Busoga, Kiziba, Karagwe, Bukoli, Bugweri
11. These dynasties had similar political institutions and royal regalia to those of Bunyoro
12. The Luo used pet names like Akiiki, Adyeri, Ateenyi, Araali, atwoki etc
13. They also introduced a system of royal burial and burial sites for their kings
14. Initiated the system of granting land to clans
15. Believed to have created the Hot Springs and crater lakes of Toro
16. Introduced new royal regalia e.g. the throne Nyangawo the royal drum Tibamulinda

## BUGANDA KINGDOM

### Describe the origins of Buganda kingdom

#### What were the origins of Buganda?

1. Origins are not clear /debatable
2. Buganda was initially part of the large Bunyoro Kitara under the Chwezi
3. The kingdom got established on the northern shores of Lake Victoria
4. The Baganda belong to the interlacustrine Bantu group
5. The earliest inhabitants lived in Busiro, Kyadondo and Mawokota counties as early as the 15<sup>th</sup> century
6. Oral traditions, claim that Buganda was founded by Kaita- Kintu
7. Kintu is believed to have come from mount Elgon region around 1314 AD
8. He passed through Bugisu, Budama, Busoga and finally into Buganda
9. He then seized power from the original 5 -6 clan heads and crowned himself as the ‘Sabataka’
10. He is said to have come with 13 -14 of the present day clans in Buganda
11. Bunyoro traditions claim that the founder of Buganda was Prince Kato – Kimera
12. Kimera is said to have come from Bunyoro around AD 1374.
13. Believed to have been a twin- brother to Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga, the founder of the Bito dynasty in Bunyoro
14. Kimera curved Buganda from Bunyoro Kitara which was on the collapse
15. 5 – 6 clans are believed to have come with Kimera from Bunyoro
16. Other traditions clam that Buganda originated from the Bantu clans who lived in the area way back around 1000 AD and others from eastern Uganda
17. Other clans of Buganda came from Bunyoro and Ssesse Islands
18. Whatever the source of the origin, the original Buganda was centered around Kyadondo, Busiro, Mawokota
19. By the 17<sup>th</sup> century Buganda had expanded to cover Ssinga, gomba and Butambala

20. It was Kabaka Katerega who captured these counties from Bunyoro
21. By the 19<sup>th</sup> century Buganda had expanded to include Buddu and Kooki
22. It was Kabaka Jjunju who captured these counties
23. Kabaka Mawanda captured the counties of Bulemezi, Kyaggwe and Bugerere
24. These counties were captured in the last half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century
25. Kabaka Muteesa brought in the lost counties of Buyaga and Bugagaizi (Ndaiga) and Buruli
26. These were annexed after the 1894 war with Bunyoro with the help of the British

**What were the factors that led to its expansion between 1650 and 1800?**

**What factors led to the expansion of Buganda during the 16<sup>th</sup> century?**

1. It had good and suitable climate for agriculture
2. Gifted with fertile soils and enough rainfall which favoured agriculture
3. Presence of plenty of food especially matooke for the growing population
4. Division of labour/ specialization existed i.e. the work of supplying food was left to women and children, as men concentrated on warfare, hunting, backcloth manufacture etc
5. Buganda started as a small state of only 3 counties hence easy to defend and administer effectively by the king and his chiefs
6. Buganda had a highly centralized and bureaucratic administration
7. The Kabaka had great strength and influence/ political power was centered around his hands/ could appoint and dismiss chiefs
8. Had a good succession system which minimized civil wars
9. After 1700, the prime minister/ Katikiro and Mugema – a senior clan leader had to choose and crown the new king
10. Strong standing army/ re-organization of the army for defence and conquest (Abajaasi)
11. And a strong royal body guard was created
12. The decline of Bunyoro from the 18<sup>th</sup> century also favoured her growth

13. Buganda was surrounded by weak neighbours
14. Buganda had able and competent kings like Kateregga, Jjunju, Ssuuna, Mawanda, Kyabaggu, Ssemakokiro etc
15. From conquered areas, Buganda was able to increase her sources of iron, ivory and slaves hence economic power
16. Areas conquered by Buganda were governed by chiefs appointed by the Kabaka- hence they were controlled from the center and could hardly break away
17. The defeated people were also incorporated and absorbed into Buganda
18. All subjects, whether conquered or indigenous were treated equally to ensure justice
19. She also established profitable trade links with the Arabs and the Swahili
20. She was able to obtain cloth, glassware, beads, guns and ammunitions
21. The Kabaka could use some of the above goods to reward his officials and soldiers
22. Buganda also grew because there was royal control over market places
23. The Kabaka through his chiefs ensured that all revenue collected as market dues was sent to him
24. The early monopoly of guns gave Buganda an advantage over her neighbours/ guns were a military asset
25. The coming of the British also strengthened her position in the region
26. The Kabaka married from all the major clans to ensure loyalty and unity
27. There was no royal clan in Buganda that would monopolize kingship/ kings took their mothers clans
28. Constant supply of tributes from the conquered states
29. The geographical location of the Kingdom was an advantage i.e. river Nile in the East, Lake Victoria in the south and Lake Kyoga in the north. Thus protected from external attacks
30. The kingdom had well – developed roads running from the capital (Mengo) to all the counties
31. Existence of a similar language and culture that created social cohesion

### **How was Buganda organized by the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

#### **Political organization**

1. The Baganda form the largest Bantu grouping in Uganda
2. Founders are Kintu and Kato Kimera
3. They occupy the area around the north west of Lake Victoria
4. Settled here as early as the 15<sup>th</sup> century
5. Political power in Buganda was created on the Kabaka/ centralized administration
6. The Kabaka was assisted by the Lukiiko
7. The Lukiiko was the legislative council
8. Kabakaship was hereditary
9. The king had absolute power/ all authority came from him
10. He also had final control over land
11. He married from all the major clans to bolster loyalty
12. Next to command to the Kabaka was the Katikiro (Chief minister)
13. His major role was to advise the Kabaka and at times performed duties on his behalf
14. The Mulamuzi and Muwanika were other prominent chiefs
15. The Queen mother (Namasole) and Queen sister also advised the king
16. The king had palace officials who spied for him
17. For easy administration, Buganda was divided into counties/ Amasaza
18. The Kabaka appointed chiefs to administer various areas
19. These chiefs were answerable to the Katikiro
20. And supplying the king with food, bark cloth, beer, timber, firewood , men etc
21. There was freedom of peasant movement in the kingdom with the permission of a headman
22. Peasants could be granted land by the local headman on payment of tribute in form of beer, labour, food and military service
23. The youth were sent to the palace courts
24. The drum was part of the royal regalia

25. Buganda had a standing army
26. The Kabaka also had royal bodyguards

### **Economic organization**

27. Agriculture was the backbone of Buganda economy
28. The main crops grown were banana, sweet potatoes, cassava and vegetables
29. But agriculture was a women and children's job as men were spared for hunting and war
30. Kept animals like cattle, sheep, pigs, goats and chicken for meat, milk eggs
31. The Kabaka herds were looked after by Hima herdsmen, Balaalo
32. Crop rotation was practiced at the interval of 3 years
33. Trade was carried out, using barter and cowrie shells
34. Ganda traded in iron hoes, bark cloth, slaves, ivory and guns with the Arabs, Swahili, Basoga and Banyankole
35. Fishing by those living on the shores of Lake Victoria and the islands of Ssesse and Buvuma
36. Hunted wild animals like elephants for ivory, buffalo, antelopes
37. Bark cloth- making
38. Buganda practiced iron working
39. Other specialists were canoe makers and craft makers
40. Vassal states paid tribute to the king
41. Taxation was another source of revenue for the kingdom
42. Raids on her neighbours like Bunyoro, Busoga and Kooki for slaves, cattle and ivory

### **Social organization**

43. Socially the Ganda society had a clan basis
44. Each clan had a clan head, special areas of origin
45. Each clan had its own burial site

46. Each clan had a totem
47. Had a class system, royal, notables and commoners
48. The Kabaka belonged to the mother's clan
49. Religiously, the Kabaka was the spiritual leader of the Baganda
50. He was considered semi divine with direct links with the ancestors
51. Each family/ clan had its own shrine where sacrifices like beer, food and animals were offered to the ancestors
52. Religion was centered around the belief in ancestral spirits/ Lubaale cult
53. The Baganda also believed in a super natural being called Katonda
54. The Lubaale were spirits of people believed to have had supernatural powers
55. They could be consulted through prophets of mediums
56. Musoke was in charge of rain, Ddungu for hunting, Kibuuka for wars, Walumbe for death, Mukasa for lakes, Nagawonye for drought
57. There were the diviners who consulted the spirits for others
58. There was also a class of herbalists who treated those who were sick
59. Witch doctors were always consulted in case of some misfortune or to ask for favours
60. The Baganda dressed in bark cloth, animal skins, beads and necklaces
61. Marriage was polygamous
62. Celebrated important events like birth of twins, marriage, naming children
63. Respect to elders was highly stressed
64. Boat racing, wrestling and dances were common forms of entertainment

**Describe Buganda's relationship with her neighbors**

1. Her neighbors were Bunyoro, Busoga, Ankole, Toro, Kooki
2. Her relationship with some was cordial and strained with others
3. Trade relations existed with her neighbors

4. For example, she exchanged iron implements with Bunyoro for items like salt
5. However, a historical sour relationship existed between Buganda and Bunyoro
6. Bunyoro lost Kooki, Buddu, Mawogola, Buruuli, Bulemezi to Buganda
7. This worsened the relationship between the two states
8. In the East, Kabaka Kyabaggu over ran Busoga
9. Kooki, accepted the overlordship of Jjunju
10. Raids between Buganda and her neighbors Bunyoro, Busoga, Toro, Ankole
11. Raids were for slaves, ivory, women, cattle and grains
12. The baganda attacked the islands of Buvuma, kalangala and Ukererwe on lake Victoria
13. At times, these raids were extended to parts of Western Kenya
14. However, loyal tributary states were spared these raids, for example, Kooki
15. Some Baganda intermarried with their neighbors like the Sogas and Nyoros
16. Buganda recruited mercenaries from her neighbors for her expansion

**Describe the organization of the following societies before 1850**

**The Chagga**

1. They are Bantu speaking people
2. Related to other Bantu tribes like the Gweno, Sukuma and Shamba
3. By the 18<sup>th</sup> century they had evolved a system of kingship
4. They had chiefs who had both political and religious powers
5. Chiefs were encouraged to extend the frontiers of their chiefdoms
6. Had rivalries with the Masai
7. Below the chiefs were judicial counselors
8. Directly appointed by the chiefs
9. These were charged with collection of taxes

10. Clan heads were also used in the maintenance of law and order
11. All these were prominent and influential men
12. Agriculture was the most important economic activity
13. They grew crops like bananas, millet and coffee
14. Irrigation was carried out to support agriculture
15. They applied manure and carried out crop rotation
16. They also kept animals like cattle, goats, cows etc
17. These could be driven down the plains to graze
18. Sometimes animals were zero grazed
19. Iron working was carried out
20. They also carried out trade
21. Exchanging their surplus food for cattle and iron products
22. They later participated in long distance trade
23. They were organized on a clan basis
24. They had several clans each with a clan head
25. Justice was administered by the chiefs
26. Chiefs also served as chief priests
27. They believed in a god called Ruwa
28. Ruwa was considered to have not been the creator of the world
29. But he was believed to have freed mankind and provided him with fruits and plants to feed on
30. They had ritual leaders
31. They believed in the powers of the ancestors
32. Sacrifices were therefore offered to please them

### **The Kikuyu**

1. They are Bantu speaking people

2. Their ancestors are believed to have migrated from Shungwaya dispersal center
3. Their society was decentralized
4. It was based on the clanship
5. The family was headed by a family head
6. The family was the lowest political unit
7. The families within each clan belonged to the local territorial unit called the Mbari
8. A council of leaders headed by Muramati led the Mbari
9. The office of the Muramati not hereditary but was entrusted to an experienced elder
10. The Muramati performed the judicial functions
11. They had no standing army
12. In case of any aggression the youth would be mobilized to defend their society
13. Their society was based on egalitarianism
14. Laws were passed and justice was administered by those in authority
15. Criminal acts were punished through fines, corporal punishments and banishment among others
16. Circumcised boys became junior warriors
17. Senior warriors became junior elders
18. Another important person was Muthamaki who was the leader of a territorial unit – Riika
19. All land belonged to the society and was allocated by the Muramati
20. Junior warriors did duties like clearing land and defending villages from wild animals
21. Agriculture was an important economic activity
22. They grew crops like beans, millet etc
23. They were also pastoralists. They kept animals like goats, cows etc
24. Fishing was carried out
25. Poultry was also important
26. They traded with the Masaai and the Akamba in terms of baskets, iron implements
27. Iron working was also practiced. They made hoes, spears

28. Hunting wild game and food gathering were also practiced
29. Bee keeping was also practiced
30. Their local markets were Kiambu, Karatina
31. The family and the age set were important features
32. The age set system “Mariika” was such that each set consists of members who had been circumcised together
33. Circumcision was important for both boys and girls
34. The Riika was important in sense of brotherhood and unity
35. Milk and butter were used as bride wealth
36. They believed in the Supreme being Ngai/ Nkai
37. Mt. Kirinyaga was considered god’s abode
38. Witches and civil spirits were seen as causes of epidemics
39. Evil spirits were given out in a ceremony of beating drums, blowing horns
40. Senior warriors would marry and after circumcision of their first child they became senior elders
41. Departed ancestors and spiritual leaders were also respected and sacrifices were offered to them
42. They also respected age
43. The warrior age group defended the community

### **The Nyamwezi**

1. The Nyamwezi are Bantu speaking people
2. They are believed to have come from Katanga region in Congo
3. They have diverse origins and speak different dialects
4. Traditions claim they first settled in central Tanzania around Tabora, between 1000 and 1500AD
5. Originally, they lived in small independent chiefdoms with no group names
6. The name Nyamwezi( “people of the moon”, was given to them by the coastal traders who saw them coming from the direction of the new moon (west)

7. Had no central political authority
8. There were about 200- 300 of them
9. These chiefdoms were bound together by ethnic association
10. The ruler of each chiefdom was called Mutemi or Ntemi
11. The position of the Ntemi was hereditary/ son or a close relative to succeed him
12. The Ntemi exercised political, religious and judicial authority over his subjects
13. Assisted by a number of elders in various capacities- counselors, priests and headmen were appointed by Ntemi
14. Prominent among these were the Ritual officers (Mgawe), army commander (Mutwala), information minister (Kikoma) and the tax/ Revenue officer (Minile)
15. All these took orders from the Ntemi
16. Some officials held their offices by hereditary right
17. The Ntemi was also assisted by a council of elders called Wanyampala
18. This council was composed of old, experienced and knowledgeable elders
19. The decisions of the council had to be respected by the Ntemi
20. Militarily, the Nyamwezi had no standing army
21. But each chiefdom had a small army whose commander would be appointed by the Ntemi himself
22. In case of population explosion/ succession disputes would lead to split or creation of new chiefdoms along clan ties
23. For easy administration, Ntemiships were further divided into small political units headed by clan heads called Gunguli

### **Social organization**

24. The Nyamwezi were religious people who believed in a powerful god Likube
25. The Ntemi was the religious leader of his people
26. He was supposed to link them to their ancestors
27. He therefore performed rituals, functions and offered prayers on their behalf

28. These prayers were for good yields, births and success in battles
29. He was the fountain of society and received a lot of respect from his people
30. He could marry as many wives as he wanted
31. Ntemi was the final man in the judicial system and final court of appeal
32. The well being of the land and the people was totally dependent on the chief's physical health and observance of special rituals
33. Land was highly valued and was communally owned by the clan and lineage
34. Shield, spears, a royal fire and drum symbolized chiefly power/ Had royal regalia
35. The family and the clan were very important social
36. They identified kinship, common ancestors which brought them together
37. Marriage was polygamous although there were also monogamous homes
38. There were also diviners and medicine men called Ufumu
39. Respect to the elders was highly expected of the youth

### **Economic organization**

40. At first the Nyamwezi were farmers
41. Grew crop e.g. millet, sorghum, potatoes, yams
42. Food was collected as a form of tax
43. There were established national food stores (granaries) that were directly under the Ntemi
44. This food bank fed the Ntemi's bodyguards, members of his court and other people outside the court, in case of hunger and famine
45. Observed the new crop harvest ceremony
46. Pastoralism also featured in the Unyamwezi's economy
47. Fished from river Pangani, Igombe and Ugalla and lake Tanganyika
48. They were hunters especially of elephants for ivory
49. There was division of labour/ specialization

50. Enabling men to be free enough and concentrate on developing their skills in fishing, raiding, trading, hunting, fighting, iron working etc
51. Iron working was also carried out
52. Pottery and craft making were also common
53. However at the end of the 18<sup>th</sup> century the Nyamwezi became leading trading people in East Africa
54. By 1800 Nyamwezi country was intersected by trade routes/ Tabora being nucleus
55. Controlled the central trade route
56. Trade was in ivory, salt, iron and slaves
57. 1800 trading contacts were made with the coast
58. They usually moved in caravans during dry seasons
59. The caravans led to the coast, Katanga and Buganda
60. Traded with neighbors like Zinza, Fipa, Vinza and Kannongo
61. Organized themselves in caravans trade became full business
62. Porterage became full business occupation
63. Also leading guides
64. It commanded high prestige among the Nyamwezi to do porterage and guiding
65. Seyyid Sais negotiated with Nyamwezi envoy for the security of Arab caravans
66. By 1850 expansion of trade had affected Nyamwezi political organization
67. Promoted the growth of larger units and introduced new ways of enforcing authority
68. Later produced powerful Nyamwezi chiefs e.g. Nyungu ya mawe, Mirambo
69. They managed to unite the numerous Nyamwezi chiefdoms into more or less centralized states of Urambo of Ukimbu respectively

## **The Galla**

### **Political organization**

1. The Galla are of Cushitic origin

2. Thought to have originated from Ethiopia then moved Somalia from where they moved into East Africa
3. Occupy eastern part of Kenya, Somali and Ethiopia
4. The Galla traditional political structure was connected to the age set system, based on ten groups
5. Each male belonged to a single through his life
6. Each age set was headed by a leader called Abba- Boku for 8 years
7. He presided over meetings, formulated laws
8. He was seen as a natural/ ritual expert
9. Abba- Boku was assisted by 3 other elders all from distinguished families
10. From the age of ten, boys were supposed to train as warriors
11. The Galla thus became a fierce warrior society respected over a wide area
12. They carried spears and shields into the battlefields
13. Each age group came up for promotion every eight years
14. And when this happened its leader had to take his people to a new territory
15. This led to expansion of the Galla territory

### **Economic organization**

16. The Galla were largely a pastoral society
17. Keeping cattle, goats, sheep, camels and donkeys
18. The search for pastures for their herds necessitated constant movement
19. This always brought them into conflicts with other tribes like Masaai, Somali
20. Practiced a bit of farming growing grains, peas, beans, pepper and vegetables
21. Limited fishing and hunting were carried out
22. Sometimes hunting of wild animals was a test of manhood
23. Traded with their neighbors like the Somali and Ethiopians and Swahili

## **Social organization**

24. The Galla believed in a Supreme being called Waqa
25. Waqa was believed to be the controller of every one's destiny
26. He always granted favours and protection
27. There existed both good and bad spirits living in lakes, rivers, mountains and trees
28. Later, some became Muslims due to interaction with the Muslims from Ethiopia

## **What were the origins of Ankole Kingdom?**

1. Ankole was one of the kingdoms that made up the Bunyoro- Kitara empire of the Chwezi.
2. It was founded by Ruhinda in about AD 1500
3. He established a Hinda dynasty that ruled Ankole up to 1967 when Obote abolished kingdoms
4. The kingdom got established in the South-western part of Uganda around the 15<sup>th</sup> century
5. Initially, Ankole was called Karo Karungi meaning peaceful land or country
6. And was a small area made up of only the present- day Rwampara county
7. However, between the 15<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> centuries, Ankole remained a small and significant kingdom
8. Its expansion started around the 18<sup>th</sup> century when it produced a number of ambitious kings who extended its boundaries
9. The people who inhabit Ankole are called Banyankole
10. And are classified as Hima (upper class pastoralists) and Iru (lower class peasants)
11. Nevertheless they speak a similar language called Runyankole

## **The Banyankole**

### **Political organization**

1. The Banyankole are descendants from the Chwezi
2. And belong to the western Bantu
3. Ankole had a centralized administration
4. The Omugabe (king) was the political head
5. He was assisted by a chain of chiefs (Abakungu)
6. His powers were hereditary and absolute
7. He could appoint and even dismiss any of his chiefs at will
8. The Bahima largely consisted of the ruling class
9. The Omugabe, Queen mother, princes and princesses formed the royal family
10. The royal family resided in the palace (Royal kraal)
11. Next to the Omugabe in hierarchy was the Enganzi- prime minister
12. He moved with the Omugabe wherever he went and at times performed some duties on his behalf
13. Nkore was divided into 16 districts for easy administration
14. Like Kashari, Rwampara, Nyabushozi, Kazo, Buhweju, Igara, Sheema, Kajara
15. Each of these districts was under an appointed chief – Mukungu
16. The kingdom was further divided into chiefdoms each with its own chief
17. Chiefs were charged with keeping law and order and collect tributes
18. Tributes included cattle, beer and millet
19. Chiefs organized and led the military units in each region (emitwe)
20. There was standing army
21. The army used spears, bows, arrows and shields
22. There were royal regalia e.g. the royal drum, spears and a crown
23. There was the royal fire which was never allowed to go out until the reigning king died

### **Economic organization**

1. Pastoralism was their main occupation- the Hima kept long horned cows

2. They supplied milk, meat, hides and other dairy products
3. Bairu were mainly agriculturalists
4. They grew millet/ grain foods, yams and iron foods
5. Because land was plentiful, peasants always shifted to new lands once the old one lost its fertility
6. Carpentry was also done and made wooded pot, stools, dishes etc
7. There was also a class of potters
8. Iron working was practiced, iron was dug from hills, smelt it and then made spears, hoes and arrows
9. Traded with their neighbors like Bunyoro, Buganda and Karagwe
10. They traded in iron hoes, salt, bark cloth, honey in exchange for coastal goods like beads, glassware etc

### **Social organization**

1. Nkore society was divided into two distinct classes – the pastoral Hima and agricultural Bairu
2. The second class (Bairu) was not highly respected
3. They were always despised and could not dream later of becoming a king
4. Even marriage and sexual intercourse between the Bairu and Bahima was considered a social disgrace and highly discouraged
5. Owning cattle was a sign of prestige and enhanced ones status in society
6. Those with few cows were always scolded and despised
7. Cattle were used for dowry and rewarding faithful servants
8. People with special skills like carpenters, black smiths and potters were highly respected despite their social class
9. The Omugabe would acquire the services of any craftsman and always rewarded them generously with cows, goats and sheep
10. Banyankole believed in Supreme Being- Ruhanga the creator of the world
11. Below Ruhanga were lesser gods (divinities) like Kazooba, Kagoro, Wamara and Omusisi to whom offerings and sacrifices were made
12. The spirits of the dead were highly respected as they could bring favours and even punish the living

13. Sacrifices of beer, milk and grains were offered to them at family shrines

### **What factors led to the decline of Ankole Kingdoms?**

1. There were clan rebellions
2. Bunyoro raids weakened her
3. Succession disputes especially after the death of Omugabe Nkutambuka around 1870
4. Death of good leaders created a vacuum i.e. Ntare VI in 1895
5. Epidemics like jiggers, small pox, rinderpest weakened the kingdom
6. The chiefdoms of Igara, Buhweju, Buzima, Mpororo remained hostile
7. The British advent weakened the kingdom
8. With the collaboration of Nuwa Mbaguta, they signed the 1901 Ankole agreement that led to Ankole's loss of independence
9. The kingdom had grown too big
10. Calamities like drought affected the kingdom
11. Constant attacks from neighbors like Rwanda under Mwami Rwabugiri
12. The conflicts between the Bairu farmers and Bahima rulers in the 1940's
13. The abolition of kingdoms by Obote in 1967 finally ended the kingdom

### **The Kenyan Luo/ Luo**

#### **Political organization**

1. They belonged to the River and lake Nilotes
2. They migrated from Bahrel- Ghazel in Sudan
3. They mostly occupy the Nyanza region in Kenya
4. Had centralized administration
5. All political powers were centered around the Rwoth
6. Rwothship was based on military powers

7. Below him was the Lodito a council of elders followed by family heads
8. The Luo were divided into clans
9. Below him were smaller chiefs
10. A number of families formed a lineage and lineages with a common ancestry formed the clan
11. Several clans living near each other were grouped into an Oganda (small kingdom) headed by the Rwoth
12. Rwoth was advised by a council called Buchpiny from all the major clans
13. Councils of elders settled disputes and crimes
14. Individual clan councils sorted out clan and family matters
15. The family was headed by the father

### **Economic organization**

16. They kept animals like cattle, goats and sheep
17. Kept for milk, meat, hides, pride, favour and payment of bride wealth
18. They also practiced agriculture
19. Growing millet, maize, simsim, groundnuts, sweet potatoes, bananas, tobacco, sorghum
20. Its men and children that milked cows
21. Carried out trade with their neighbors
22. Major items of trade were iron implements and food stuffs
23. Fishing was carried out by those living near water bodies
24. Iron smelting for making implements like hoes, spears, arrowheads and pangas
25. Raids for cattle and women on their neighbors
26. Hunting was also carried out
27. Pottery and basket weaving were also done. Beautiful baskets and mats were made

### **Social organization**

28. Believed in traditional religion
29. Believed in a Supreme creator called Nyasaye
30. The elders through the ancestral spirits offered prayers to him
31. They organized sacrifices to appease the ancestors
32. The sacrifices were done in sacred places where people gathered to witness the prayers
33. Spirits (Juogi) worked for both good and evil through traditional doctors.
34. For example, they could cause diseases or mental disorders
35. Jachien was a troublesome ghost / spirit forgotten by the descendants as angry spirit or one whose murder was not avenged
36. Services of diviners (ajuogu) had to be sought and sacrifices offered at the grave of the suspected spirit
37. Had rain makers in their society
38. Those who practiced witchcraft were summarily executed using clubs
39. Animals were highly/ ancestors had returned to earth in a different form

### **The Maasai**

1. The Masaai fall under the Plain Nilotes
2. They are one of the indigenous African ethnic groups of semi- nomadic people
3. They moved from the area West of Lake Turkana in around the 17<sup>th</sup> century
4. They existed into two sub- groups, the Kwavi and Purko

#### **Political organization**

5. The Maasai society was decentralized/ had no central authority
6. Instead the clan was the basis of political organization
7. They were divided into 16 independent clans/ groups

8. Each clan had its own leader called *Laibon (Oloibon)* and handled its own affairs
9. It also had its own territory, cattle brand, pasture and water supply
10. The sixteen clans or groups were divided into age sets
11. Its through these age sets that leadership was exercised
12. It was governed through elders the most important being the Laibon
13. A young man became a member after circumcision performed at 16 years
14. After an interval of 15years another age set was initiated
15. After 15 years as senior warriors, they advanced to the status of junior elders
16. And after 15 years to that of senior elders
17. Age set were linear and their names were unique and never repeated
18. The most active age set was the Moran/ the junior warrior group
19. It was led by a military captain called Olaiguanani
20. He also arranged for the distribution of any captured children and cattle
21. Military training was stressed among the Maasai
22. Raiding was also encouraged
23. The elders administered the clans/ groups of the clans
24. Murder of a clansman was punishable either by killing a member of the murderers clan or by paying 49 heads of cattle to the bereaved family/ clan
25. They maintained law and order
26. From mid 19<sup>th</sup> century, the Laibon became the centre of political power
27. After initiation the boys became junior warriors- IImurran
28. Once elected, Olaiguanani was presented with a ceremonial club Oriankha to symbolize his new status
29. He organized cattle raids and arranged the distribution of the booty
30. A successful raid was a sign of social success and prestige
31. The IImurran lived separately in manyattas where they were drilled in military techniques

32. From junior warriors they progressed to senior warriors and finally to senior elders

### **Social organization**

33. Socially, they believed in one supreme creator- Enkai/ Engai

34. Who was the source of life and punished bad people

35. Sacrifices were offered Enkai around secret places

36. The Laibon the most religious figure prayed to the Enkai on behalf of the people

37. He guided the society, had ritual powers and could prophesize

38. He could also make charms for success in wars etc

39. Senior elders helped organized society especially during difficult periods

40. Women and children were the lowest members of society

41. The warrior class (Moran) defended the homesteads

42. They conducted raids and surveyed areas for grazing

43. Women were initiated every year

44. There was also cultural exchange between the Maasai and the neighboring tribes

45. For example, the Kikuyu adopted circumcision and the military techniques of the Maasai

46. They had no family structure and thus build no permanent homes

47. But only temporary structures locally called Manyattas

48. Marriage among the Maasai was polygamous

49. Peculiarly, the Maasai also allowed polyandry, whereby a woman married not only her husband but the entire age set

50. They also had a tradition of beautifying their bodies

51. They pierce and stretch their robes using stones, thorns and twigs and the women wear various forms of beads

### **Economic organization**

52. Economically, the Maasai were divided into two distinctive people
53. Purko Maasai who were pastoralists and led a nomadic life
54. They kept cattle, sheep and goats
55. And the Kwavi Maasai (Iloikop) who were cultivators
56. They grew grains, food and vegetables
57. These led a settled life
58. They grew crops like sorghum, finger millets, bull rush millet
59. They traded with other communities, like the Kikuyu
60. Exchanging hides, milk and butter of beans, millet, tobacco and sugarcane. There were established markets where goods would be exchanged
61. Women did the marketing of goods
62. Iron- workers and made spears, arrowheads and shields, ornaments
63. They were raiders
64. They were also hunters
65. Practiced some fishing
66. Art and crafts were also practiced
67. They also made honey wine
68. Women milked and herded animals

### **The Luyia**

1. The Luyia are Bantu speaking people
2. Today they inhabit the Western part of Kenya and their neighbors are the Luo

#### **Political organization**

3. The Luyia lived together in villages called Amatala

4. Grouped together into units called Ulukango
5. Each Olukango consisted of about 500 members
6. The leaders of each Olukango had both religious and political powers
7. He was also a rainmaker and giver of land
8. The Luyia of Wanga had established a system of kingship headed by a king called Nabongo
9. Assisted by a prime minister – Omwikeziy/ Omwikhasiya
10. An army commander- Omusesia and provincial and district chiefs Abami
11. The Nabongo ruled on the advice of councils
12. Village elders formed these councils that specialized in different areas of administration
13. Each of these was small and specialized so no single group could threaten him (Nabongo)

#### **Economic organization**

14. Agriculture was their main economic activity
15. Growing mainly vegetables and grains for their own consumption
16. There was division of labour
17. Women also stored the food and made beer
18. On top of cultivation the Luyia herded animals like cattle, goats and sheep
19. Hunting was also carried out. Men hunted, slaughtered, skinned and prepared dead animals
20. They also carried out some fishing
21. They traded with their neighbors like the Kikuyu, Luo and Maasai
22. During times of difficulty like famine, the Luyia sought markets in distant places and would acquire goods (especially food) on credit promising to pay when better times came

#### **Social organization**

23. The Luyia believed in one Supreme god called Were, the creator and giver of life
24. However, Were could only be contacted through spirits of the dead

25. The spirits of the dead relatives were therefore highly revered
26. They were considered so powerful as they could bless and harm
27. For example, a relative not buried with due respect could cause infertility in women
28. Diviners were part of the Luyia society
29. The Luyia society was based on clans made of age grade called Olubaka/ Likhula/ Oluse
30. Those born in the same year belonged to the same Olubaka.
31. Sacrificial stones were erected in the yard of the principal wife and were usually three
32. The eldest son was supposed to inherit these stones and would then divide them between his brothers, keeping one for himself
33. Circumcision was always done at the initiation stage
34. The initiated went through different stages until they reached the old age and respected old age
35. These two groups formed a ruling group called Abenengo

## **The Acholi**

### **Political organization**

1. Emerged out of intermarriage between the Luo, Ateker and Sudanic Madi
2. Today, they inhabit Northern Uganda
3. Political power was centered on the Rwoth
4. He was the political head and religious leader of his people
5. He ruled on the advice of a council comprising elders from all the major clans
6. He gave favours according to work
7. Had no centralized administration
8. Political affairs were handled by the clan, each with its own rituals and regalia
9. Each family belonged to a particular clan that shared a common ancestry
10. Clan councils upheld traditional, religious and legal customs

11. They also controlled the course of revenge
12. The family was the basic social unit
13. The man had a lot of powers over his wife and children
14. The Jogo were the village heads, appointed by the Rwoth
15. Their duty was to maintain law and order in their respective villages
16. And also collect taxes and tribute
17. They had no standing army
18. It was the duty of the youth to defend society in case there was need
19. They were also supposed to carry out raids for cattle

### **Economic organization**

20. Carried out agriculture growing cereals, like millet, peas, beans and sorghum
21. Their main economic activity was pastoralism, keeping short- horned cattle
22. They highly valued cows for prestige, bride wealth and rewards
23. Traded with their neighbors like the Langi, Banyoro and Sudanese.
24. Fishing was also carried out by those who stayed near rivers

### **Social organization**

25. They believed Jok- Lubanga as the creator and sustainer of the world
26. They always prayed to through the spirits
27. The Rwoth was the religious head of his people
28. He was believed to have direct links with the ancestors
29. Inheritance followed the father's side
30. Land was communally owned
31. It was the duty of the clan head to protect it on behalf of his people

## **The Akamba**

1. They were Bantu speaking people
2. Lived in eastern part of Kenya between Witu and Kitui
3. They are part of coastal and highland Bantu and by the 18<sup>th</sup> century they were already settled in this area
4. Had no centralized authority
5. Authority was in the hands of councils (Nzana)
6. i.e. village council, regional council to county council
7. Councils settled disputes and set standard behaviors in society
8. Had no standing army

### **Social organization**

9. Socially, they lived according to clans
10. Each clan was named basing on its occupation i.e. porters, farmers, black smith etc
11. Clans were divided into age grades
12. Starting from the adolescent grade up to the most important grade of elders
13. A man was considered an adult after reaching 4<sup>th</sup> grade (Imwana)
14. Anake was the 5<sup>th</sup> grade which was to protect the society and their property
15. They believed in Mulungu as the Supreme god
16. Mulungu had two supporting gods i.e. the creator and the splinter
17. They had respect for the dead ancestors
18. They offered sacrifices, offered prayers
19. They respected religious leaders who mediated between the dead and the living
20. Had belief that the spirits lived in mountains and rivers
21. They had ceremonies at birth and death

22. Religious leaders helped in purification exercises if one failed to observe certain customs and traditions

### **Economic organization**

23. Economically, initially the Akamba were farmers

24. They grew millet, maize, beans, yams etc

25. They kept animals like cattle, goats, sheep etc

26. Some were black smiths who made bracelets, anklets, necklaces etc

27. They carried out hunting for food supplements and for trade

28. Hides, ivory and sometimes hunting were source of medicine

29. Fishing was carried out though eating fish was a taboo.

30. Hunted for hides, meat, ivory etc

31. The Kamba locally traded among themselves

32. They traded with their neighbors like the Nyika, Embu and Sambura

33. Exchanging ivory for cattle with the Nyika, Embu and Sambura

34. Practiced division of labour, women cultivated and harvested, men built homes, looked after animals etc

35. The Akamba participated in long distance trade controlling the northern trade route

36. They majorly dealt in slaves, ivory, honey, wax, skins and hides

### **The Nandi**

1. The Nandi belong to the wider group of highland Nilotics

2. They inhabit Western Kenya and are believed to have come from the North, particularly Ethiopia

### **Political organization**

3. The Nandi society was organized on a clan basis
4. Clans were divided into age grades and further divided into age sets
5. Three age sets formed an age grade. Several clans made up a political unit called Pororiet, administered by a council called Kok.
6. Members to this council were chosen because of their military exploits and wisdom
7. The decisions of the Kok would be communicated to other clan members
8. It is this council – Kok that settled crimes and disputes
9. Witnesses would be called to help the council reach unbiased decisions
10. There was a section of lawyers called Kiriogik. These acted as advisers to the council
11. There was another broad- based council called Kokwetap Pororiet that constituted a territorial council with representatives from all the major clans
12. At the adolescent stage, the youth were initiated and these made up an age set
13. Three age sets made up an age grade and several age grades made up a clan
14. The junior age grade constituted the warrior class of society
15. Each age grade succeeded one another every after 15 years
16. The Nandi staged a prolonged resistance against the British occupation of their land

### **Economic organization**

17. Initially, the Nandi were food gathers and hunters who collected wild fruits and other food stuffs
18. They kept dogs, made poisoned- arrows, spears and sophisticated traps
19. With time they took on pastoralism, keeping cows, sheep and goats
20. Animals provided them with milk, meat and butter- the source of their livelihood
21. Farming was also done though on a small scale
22. They mainly grew cereals and vegetables and this was mainly done by women
23. Towards the end of the colonial period, the Nandi picked interest in agriculture and grew cash crops and food crops like maize
24. They also traded with their neighbors

25. Exchanging mainly iron implements like spears, arrows and animal products.

### **Social organization**

26. Initiation ceremonies were conducted every five years

27. Youth of the same age were always initiated at the same time and they formed an age set.

28. Three age set formed an age grade

29. These age grades succeeded one another every fifteen years and the circle would be completed in 105 years

30. Among the Nandi, were religious leaders called Orkoik (singular orkoiyot)

31. These followed prophecies of Orkoiyot Borgabotua who had died in 1800

32. They were supposed to avert any calamity that would befall their people like famine, drought etc

33. They were also consulted in times of military campaigns and raids

34. They were in return given gifts like animals and beer, for their advice and favours

### **How was the Hindu dynasty established in Karagwe?**

#### **Explain the contribution of Ruhinda to the founding of the kingdom of Karagwe.**

1. Karagwe kingdom is another interlacustrine kingdom located between Rwanda/ Burundi and Lake Victoria
2. The earliest Bantu to settle in this area were farmers, growing mainly millet, yams and sorghum
3. These Bantu had come from the direction of South- west around the 5<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries
4. Many of them stayed for only two or three centuries before migrating north- east to Ankole, Bunyoro and Toro.
5. Later a section of these returned to Karagwe fleeing from the Luo invasion.
6. By the time they returned, they had mingled with the Chwezi.
7. They reached Karagwe around the 16<sup>th</sup> century and set up the Hinda dynasty.

8. They were led by Ruhinda towards the end of the 16<sup>th</sup> century; these were the Chwezi immigrants from the North (Ankole) and moved into Karagwe.
9. When he reached Karagwe, Ruhindi deposed the local leader Nono (son of Malija) of the Basita.
10. And set up the Hindu dynasty
11. But it is not clear as to how these newcomers readily established themselves over the local people.
12. Some historians suggest that they were welcomed because of their intelligence and superior military and administrative qualities
13. Others suggest that these Chwezi immigrants just corrupted the local people with gifts of cattle
14. After establishing his rule in Karagwe, Ruhinda set up his capital at Bwehangwe. It was to be the centre of his rule
15. After setting his capital, he sent out his sons with royal regalia e.g. spears, drums, crowns and shields to establish Hinda sub dynasties in the surrounding areas.
16. This gave rise to small independent kingdoms under his sons like Gisaka, Kyamtwara, Ihangiro, Buzinza, Busubi, Ukerewe and Nasa
17. These were not under the direct authority of Ruhinda and upon his death, they all became independent.

### **How was the kingdom of Karagwe organized?**

1. It had a centralized administration
2. Had a royal regalia e.g. spears, drums, crowns and shields
3. The state build on a clan system
4. This clan system was centered on the clan leader Muharambwa
5. The Muharambwa presided over all the religious functions
6. Clans were grouped into eight bigger units or chiefdom
7. Like Kianja, Bukara, Kyamtwara, Casaba, Ihingiro, Misenyi, Bugabo, Karagwe
8. But the creation of several independent Hinda sub- dynasties created rivalries
9. And weakened the Hinda administration in Karagwe

10. Clan among the Banyambo were used for efficient administration
11. Clan leaders were charged with the collection of taxes and tribute
12. They were also supposed to lead clan courts that settled disputes among the people
13. Each chiefdom became an Ikinga (nation)
14. Its chief was the final man on everything in the chiefdom
15. He could dismiss a clan head if his people appealed
16. He also had administrative, religious and judicial powers
17. They controlled trade links with the neighbors
18. They were divided according to age
19. Boys of the same age group were collected at the local chief's residence where they received instructions in correct manners towards their equals and elders
20. A few outstanding candidates remained there to receive military training
21. There, they also learnt court manners and correct language for particular occasions
22. There was hereditary leadership
23. A caste system also existed i.e. Hima (pastoralists) and Banyambo (farmers)
24. They were farmers growing millet, sorghum and yams
25. They also kept long horned cattle
26. The Banyambo also carried out trade
27. Exchanged trade items like ivory and iron products for goods like iron coils
28. Karagwe also controlled the long distance trade route to Buganda
29. Iron working was also carried out
30. Fishing was also carried out
31. Hunting was a major source of meat
32. Mining especially iron and salt was common
33. They liked swimming because of the presence of water bodies
34. They believed in ancestral spirits with different gods

35. Ceremonies could be made to mark important days and event such as births and marriage

**What effects did the Hinda dynasty have on the people of Karagwe region?**

1. The effects were political, economic and social
2. They introduced the belief in ancestral spirits
3. Encouragement of age set system
4. Boys of the same age group were collected at the local chief's residence where they received instructions in correct manners towards their equals and elders
5. Also received military training
6. Outstanding candidates were sent to the king's court
7. Where they learnt court manners and correct language for particular occasions
8. Introduction of long- horned cows replacing the agricultural economy
9. Iron working
10. The Banyombo also carried out trade
11. Exchanged trade items like ivory and iron products for goods like iron coils
12. Karagwe also controlled the long distance trade route to Buganda
13. Introduction of centralized administration
14. Which replaced the family/ clan system centered on the clan leader Muharambwa
15. Clans were grouped into eight bigger units or chiefdoms
16. E.g. Kianja, Bukara, Kyamtware, Kiziba, Ihingiro, Misenyi, Bugabo, Karagwe
17. Clan leaders were charged with the collection of tribute
18. They were also supposed to lead clan courts that settled disputes
19. Each chiefdom became an Ihang (nation)
20. Its chief could dismiss a clan head if his people appealed
21. The chiefs had administrative, religious and judicial powers

22. He controlled trade links with the neighbors
23. Introduction of royal regalia e.g. spears, drums, crowns and shields
24. But the creation of several independent Hinda sub- dynasties created rivalries
25. And weakened the Hinda administration in Karagwe

## **TOPIC 6**

### **TRADE IN EAST AFRICA**

**What were the reasons for the development of the long distance trade?**

**What were the factors for the development of the long distance trade?**

1. It was the trade over long distance to and from the interior as well as within the interior
2. Also known as the pre colonial caravan trade
3. Developed in the 1<sup>st</sup> half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century/ 1830s because of the following
4. Profitability of the trade
5. High demand for local items like ivory, gold, slaves, iron
6. As well as foreign products like guns, beads, cloth, beads by the interior chiefs and people
7. Surplus production of food enabling trade to occur
8. The arrival of Seyyid Said and his involvement in the trade
9. He set up clove plantations that needed slave labour
10. He organized personal trade caravans into the interior
11. Protected the caravans by allowing they carry his flag
12. Increasing demand for interior goods by the coastal people made the Nywamwezi move long distance to look for the items demanded.
13. The introduction of the gun improved security for the traders
14. Role played by the Banyans who financed the caravans inland

15. Presence of organized societies in the interior/ the role played by the African tribes like the Yao, Nyamwezi etc
16. Role played by African chiefs like Tippu tip, Mirambo, Muteesa etc who organized the trade
17. East Africa was the only reliable source of slave trade following the abolition of slave trade in west Africa
18. Cooperation between the coastal and interior people
19. The Nyamwezi and Kamba lived in the dry areas with little rain and poor soils/ deficiency in natural resources by some societies.
20. Development in the transport sector i.e. donkeys were later introduced to make transport easy.
21. The development of trade routes which eased penetration into the interior
22. Cowrie shells introduction, which made transactions easy
23. Later the minting and use of coins by some coastal towns
24. Specialization specialist permitted men to trade while women looked after the homes
25. Some societies had skills that enabled them to produce superior goods
26. Some goods had unlimited market i.e. demanded all over East Africa
27. Double coincidence of wants
28. The growth development of Zanzibar as market center
29. The evolution and development of Kiswahili language eased business transactions.
30. Exhaustion of trade goods at the immediate hinterland resulted into long journeys into the interior.
31. Presence and influence of Islam which cemented unity and brought trustworthiness among the traders.
32. The good and favourable climate which was ideal for business and agriculture
33. Some tribes were strategically located giving them an edge in this trade e.g. the Nyamwezi
34. The flat nature of lands eased the movement of the traders e.g. the Nyamweziland
35. Hospitality given to the foreigners/ Arabs by the interior people and the chiefs
36. Presence of small scale industries like the weaving, curving and iron smelting that produced goods for sale
37. The establishment of plantations in Maurituis, Magadascar etc by the French that needed slave labour

38. Some societies produced goods in excess enabling them to have surpluses for sale
39. The peace, stability and security in places like Buganda favoured long distance activities
40. Interclan wars and raids caused displacement that resulted into easy capture of slaves
41. Natural calamities like drought, famine etc forced societies to move long distance for food
42. Existence of slaves as porters who carried goods from the interior to the coast

**Describe the organization of the long distance trade?**

**How was this trade organized during the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

**How was the 18<sup>th</sup> century caravan trade in East Africa organized?**

**How was the pre-colonial caravan trade organized during the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

1. This was the trade over long distances to and from the interior as well as within the interior
2. The major participants were the Nyamwezi, Kamba, Yao, Chagga, Baganda from the interior
3. Participants from outside were the Arabs, Swahili and zanzibaris
4. Travelled in caravans of 100 and 1000 men
5. Caravans carried the sultan's flag for security reasons
6. Caravans were sent inland from Zanzibar and other coastal towns
7. They were armed and included porters and medicine men
8. It was mainly carried out during the dry season
9. Due to long distances there developed regular stopping places with facilities for storage of goods as well as supplies
10. The trade was initially conducted on a barter system
11. With time, cowrie- shells were introduced
12. These were later replaced by coins
13. Transport was by human beings/ human portorage
14. The Nyamwezi provided the most skilled porters

15. The Nyika and Makaranga also acted as porters
16. Exports from the interior were slaves, ivory, gold, iron, wax, hides, copper, ostrich feathers, rhinoceros horns, honey, salt etc
17. Imports from the coast were beads, guns, mirrors, glassware, plates, pans, swords, Persian rugs, brass, cloth etc
18. Chiefs provided security along the trade routes
19. Most of the items East Africa exported were got from the interior
20. Slaves were acquired through raiding or selling domestic servants
21. Negotiations were made with local chiefs and rulers over a wide area e.g. Mirambo, Msiri, Tippu Tip, Muteesa etc
22. i.e the trade involved taxation
23. Gold was got from Menomotapa kingdom
24. Ivory by hunting down elephants
25. There were agents and bases inland and at the coast like Ujiji, Bagamoyo, Tabora, Unyanyembe etc
26. It took months or years collecting items from the interior to take to the coast
27. There were agents and bases inland and at the coast e.g. Tabora and Ujiji
28. The Banyans financed the Arabs and Swahili who charged them interest
29. The medium of communication was Swahili
30. There were three major trade routes to the interior
31. i.e. the northern, central and southern routes
32. the northern route ran from Pangani, Tanga and Mombasa inland to Kilimanjaro area and to the eastern shores of L.victoria and through Kenya as far as Mount Elgon
33. This route mainly supplied ivory
34. And was controlled by the kamba
35. The central route ran from bagamoyo inland to Tabora
36. It was dominated by the Nyamwezi
37. It mainly supplied slaves and salt

38. The southern route started from part of Tanzania (Lindi and Kilwa) through Malawi then to the ancient Menomotapa Kingdom
39. It mainly supplied gold
40. This route was manned and controlled by the Yao
41. However, there was another less significant route of the Khartoumers
42. It mainly ran through the Nile valley.

**What role did Mirambo play in the organization of long distance trade?**

1. He was born around 1830s among the Nyamwezi and became a chief in 1860s
2. He played a leading role in the organization of long distance trade
3. He carried out raids on his neighbors to get slaves
4. He organized raids to hunt down elephants for ivory
5. He obtained salt from the Vinza through trade expeditions
6. Acquired guns from Arabs and Europeans through his trade expeditions
7. He attracted many traders/ Arabs to Nyamwezi land
8. He provided guides to incoming traders
9. Provided experienced porters to carry goods e.g. ivory to the coast
10. Levied taxes on traders passing through his area and used the proceeds to boost trade
11. Using his army he provided security to traders
12. Controlled the central route, which was the heart of this trade
13. Made friendship with other African chiefs that boosted trade
14. E.g. Muteesa I, chief Fundikira and Tippu Tip
15. He however passed away in 1884

**Explain the importance of Mirambo to the history of the Unyamwezi during the early 19<sup>th</sup> century**

1. Mirambo was born in the late 1830s in Nyamwezi land to a Ntemi chief
2. Had a very humble beginning
3. Spent part of his early life in Bugomba where he had been taken as a captive of the Tuta
4. Here he quickly mastered the Ngoni military tactics
5. And used them to build a strong army of Ruga- Ruga which he used to build his kingdom
6. Started his political career as a ruler of Ugowe (Uyowa) a chiefdom that belonged to his father
7. Later inherited Uliankuru through his mother
8. It was from these small chiefdoms that Mirambo started to create the Nyamwezi kingdom
9. Embarked on wars of conquest to expand his little kingdom into an empire
10. Organized expeditions against the Vinza, Iramba, Tongure, Sukuma etc
11. His influence was felt as far as Burundi and Rwanda
12. By 1876, Mirambo had already established his powerful capital at Urambo
13. Established trading links with the Arabs at the coast
14. Through which he got firearms to conquer other states
15. Expanded the empire westwards to Ujiji
16. Eastwards to the eastern rift valley
17. Northwards to lake Victoria
18. And southwards to Lake Rukwa
19. Attempted to establish diplomatic relation with the Kabaka of Buganda (Muteesa I) in 1876
20. Was friendly to the British whom he believed would help him gain prosperity
21. By 1880, Mirambo controlled the major trade routes from Tabora to Ujiji and to Katonga
22. Was the sole leader of Nyamwezi and his kingdom heavily relied on him
23. Empire suddenly disintegrated after his death in 1884

## **What factors led to the rise of Mirambo's empire?**

### **Why was mirambo able to build his empire between 1870 and 1880?**

1. Mirambo was born in the late 1830s in Nyamwezi land to a Ntemi chief
2. He grew to become a charismatic personality which made him know what to do and when
3. He was a tall, muscular, soft spoken and courageous man
4. He spent his early years as a captive of the Tuta Ngoni
5. While in captivity, he learnt the Ngoni military tactics
6. Which he later used to build his empire at the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century
7. The empire rose due to Mirambo's strong army, called the Ruga- Ruga
8. The army was well equipped
9. The Ruga- Ruga had acwuired the Ngoni military tactics i.e. cow horn, using assegai etc
10. The strong military force was for territorial expansion and defense
11. It included 500 well trained, well paid and well armed Ruga- Ruga soldiers and 7000 other soldiers
12. He personally led the army into battle
13. He highly paid his soldiers and warriors which gave them morale to fight
14. Equipped it with guns acquired from the Arabs and Swahili traders
15. Between 1860 and 1870 carried out extensive conquest against the Vinza, Tongure etc
16. In the 1860s he captured the chiefdom of Ugowe which belonged to his father
17. i.e. the death of his father made him heir to the kingdom
18. Later he inherited his mother's chiefdom of Ulinkuru
19. During the same period he annexed Nyatura, Sukuma, Burundi, Zinza and Kanongo
20. Had his headquarters at Urambo (named after him)
21. Rivalled in power only by Unyanyembe
22. Trade helped Mirambo to extend his power and influence

23. Controlled major trade routes in his country and imposed taxes on traders passing through his territory
24. Had weak neighbors like the Ha, Vinza, Sukuma and Samba
25. Nyamwezi lived in small chiefdom that were weak and disorganized hence easy to conquer
26. Conquered people were absorbed into Nyamwezi society paid tributes and recruits into the army
27. Girls were married to soldiers
28. Conquered districts were placed under his officials
29. Neighboring chiefdoms were forced to pay allegiance to Nyamwezi
30. Often sought respect from those using his territory e.g. closed routes to Arab traders when they refused to do this. And only reopened them when they sought for peace
31. Was a man of vision who sought friendship with other African leaders like Muteesa I, Tippu Tip, Nyungu yam awe, Isike of Tabora etc
32. The empire had good relationship with Europeans and Arabs
33. E.g. he invited LMS missionaries to open up mission stations in his area
34. Ensured cordial relations with the Sultan of Zanzibar
35. In 1875, he signed peace treaty with the Arabs declaring trade route open
36. The Nyamwezi were hospitable people
37. Good/ strategic location of his empire which enhanced trade
38. Acquisition of guns from coastal Arabs
39. Due to raids

### **Why did this empire collapse after 1884?**

1. The empire lacked a solid foundation and effective administration machinery
2. It consisted of separate chiefdoms with different organizations and traditional institutions (no effective central administration)
3. The local chiefs retained a lot of power

4. There was lack of unity
5. The empire had become too big to be effectively administered
6. Some of his expeditions were totally disastrous i.e. the raids he made on Sukuma
7. He conflicted with the Arabs over trade and homage forced Mirambo to close the trade route
8. Decline of the Nyamwezi trade led to the collapse of the empire
9. His army of Ruga- Ruga was not dependable
10. It became a menace after his death, looting and burning people's property forcing the Germans to take over the area
11. His empire was also engulfed in civil wars conquered states broke way
12. His chiefs were also weak
13. Some of his expeditions were disastrous e.g. raids on Sukuma
14. His persistent slave raids made the missionaries interfere in the running of his empire
15. His rule was brutal and dictatorial
16. The death of Mirambo in 1884 left the empire shaky
17. He had built the empire around his personality- personalized the kingdom
18. He failed to establish a lasting administrative system that could survive after his death
19. His successor and half brother Mpandashalo lacked the charisma, vision and courage of Mirambo
20. Freedom given to vassal states allowed them to break away during the death of Mirambo
21. Increasing European interest in East Africa finally brought his empire to an end.

**Explain the importance of Nyungu ya Mawe to the history of the Unyamwezi during the early 19<sup>th</sup> century.**

1. Nyungu ya Mawe was born in 1830 in Unyanyembe Nyamwezi land.
2. He was a Prince from the royal family of Unyanyembe.
3. Nyungu ya Mawe was a praise name meaning "Pot of stone" (the pot that never breaks)
4. Being a prince, Nyungu ya Mawe was destined to be a chief and in 1850 he became one.

5. In 1865, he deserted his people after the Arabs had beheaded chief Mnwa Sele
6. Organized expeditions over most of the Kiambu county to the East and south of Tabora
7. Also controlled the trade route to the coast
8. And other routes that joined Tabora with Ufipa
9. Unlike Mirambo, Nyungu ya Mawe created a centralized administration
10. He used the Ruga- Ruga to strengthen and extend his influence
11. His own nominees called Vitwale (singular Mutwale) ruled the conquered areas
12. Refused the conquered chiefs to collect and dispose ivory
13. The vitwale collected the ivory and forwarded it to Nyungu yam awe at Kiwele
14. The vitwale had neither political nor ritual powers and were subordinate to Nyungu ya mawe
15. He reorganized the administration of his state
16. Nyungu yam awe divided his empire into six or seven provinces
17. With each under a Mutwale
18. The administrative units cut across the old borders to form a new state
19. He created a highly disciplined army of Ruga- Ruga
20. Soldiers were brave but ruthless and savage in battle
21. Soldiers wore the remains of their victims, carrying human skulls
22. Nyungu ya Mawe believed much in magical powers
23. Cared little about men's lives
24. Referred to his warriors as logs
25. Had a brilliant military record
26. In 1871 was busy raiding areas south of Unyanyembe
27. In 1875, captured Kiwele chiefdom in central Kiambu
28. In 1884, Nyungu ya Mawe – the one eyed warrior died
29. After conquering several areas in the south- eastern part of Kiambu

## **Describe the role played by any two of the following in long distance trade**

### **Akamba**

1. The Akamba practiced pastoralism over a wide area in the drier areas.
2. There was some agriculture in the west of Ukambani
3. Many obtained a living from hunting in the least fertile areas
4. Early 19<sup>th</sup> century saw a considerable development by the Akamba long distance traders
5. Commercial activities took place over a wide area amongst Chagga, Segeju and on Laikipia- Masaai and Kikuyu
6. Ivory was especially important in the first half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. They hunted elephants
7. Iron ore was washed from streams. Skilled smiths and craftsmen made various items such as ornaments like chains on big demand and poisoned arrow heads
8. Huge Kamba caravans developed, Kivoi of Kitui was the most enterprising caravan leader
9. Opposition to hunting and trading parties grew in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century. Kivoi was killed near mountain Kenya
10. By the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century big caravans to the coast carried ivory, rhino horns, honey, tobacco, arrow heads, bees wax
11. Later they took to slave raiding
12. Many Akamba became very rich e.g. Kivoi
13. Some areas seem to have given up genuine commercial activities for banditry
14. They controlled the northern route running from Pangani to Taita up to western shores of Lake Victoria
15. Provided security to trade caravans crossing the Nyika
16. Acted as the middlemen between the coastal and interior traders
17. Acted as porters
18. They were herbalists who treated sick traders
19. They acted as guides to the traders
20. Provided market for goods from the coast e.g. glassware, metal ware, clothes, beads

21. Acted as interpreters to the traders
22. Provided food to the traders
23. Provided accommodation to the traders
24. Inspired other tribes to join the trade
25. Provided trade items

### **The Yao**

1. Originally lived around Lake Malawi where they practiced agriculture
2. Were major long distance traders in southern Tanzania
3. Were the first to develop long distance trade
4. By the 19<sup>th</sup> century the Yao had started to trade in cloth with Arab traders from the coast
5. As a result of violent disruption that followed the Ngoni invasion, the Yao began raiding for slaves
6. As the demand for slaves increased at the coast especially at Kilwa, the Yao became the chief suppliers of slaves
7. In the early years of 19<sup>th</sup> century, slaves were acquired by trade but later force was applied
8. Under powerful chiefs like Mpanda, Mataka, trade along the southern route remained mainly in the hands of the Yao
9. They organized and sent their own caravans to the coast
10. Coastal traders who travelled inland came mainly as clients of the Yao chiefs
11. The Yao obtained guns, beads and glass in exchange of slaves
12. Women were valued more highly than men. The majority of slaves were men
13. The love of the travel among the Yao led to increase in the volume of the trade
14. After sale and disposal of slaves at the coast, porters were paid off and fresh caravans were organized
15. With the abolition of slave trade, the Yao volume of trade decreased
16. Acted as middlemen between coastal traders and the tribes of the interior
17. Provided security for traders

18. Employed Swahili secretaries to make it easier to carry on business and diplomatic communication with the traders
19. Supplied foodstuffs and facilities to the traders

### **The Nyamwezi**

1. Occupied central Tanzania, parts of Rwanda, Burundi and Congo Zaire
2. They started as cattle keepers and cultivators
3. Towards the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, cattle keeping became less important
4. They were also fishermen
5. They became involved with long distance trade with the Arabs at the coast
6. And became one of the most prominent long distance traders
7. They gained the reputation of being the main suppliers of caravan porters and organizers in the 19<sup>th</sup> century
8. Organized the trade caravans to the coast
9. They acted as middlemen connecting the interior with the coast
10. They supplied the coastal people with salt from Vinza and copper from Katanga
11. Provided market for goods from the coast e.g. glassware, metal ware, clothes, beads
12. Provided trade items like ivory, slaves, skins obtained from far and wide animals
13. They had their own caravans travelling to the coast by the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century
14. The caravans stayed at coast trading and farming until the next dry season
15. Set up trading posts e.g. at Ujiji and Tabora
16. Tabora became their important trading center from which they moved westwards to Ujiji and northwards to Buganda
17. Some rulers became very rich because of this trade e.g. Mirambo and Nyungu ya Mawe, msiri
18. In the late 19<sup>th</sup> century, the Nyamwezi were rivaled by the Swahili and they lost the middleman position in the trade
19. They acted as guides to traders

20. They controlled the central route that ran from Dar-es-salaam to lake Tanganyika and ending into Congo
21. Provided security to the coastal traders
22. Provided food to the traders
23. Acted as interpreters to the traders
24. Imposed taxes to the traders
25. Provided land to the traders for agriculture
26. Carried raids for slaves

### **What impact did this trade have on the people of East Africa?**

1. Many people became rich in the interior especially the chiefs and rulers
2. It led to political development i.e. political units based on military and economic power were formed e.g. Mirambo, Tippu Tip and Nyungu ya Mawe
3. Some rulers expanded their territories in order to gain control of trade routes, market places and places of production e.g. Kabalega expanded southwards to Katwe to control the salt deposits there.
4. New commodities were introduced in the interior e.g. fire arms, cloth, beads, glass
5. It led to the rise of strong statesmen like Mirambo, Kivoi, Nyungu ya Mawe, Msiri etc
6. It enabled them to impose their authority and influence because they had acquired the gun, which had become the source of economic and political power
7. States with access to the guns were able to dominate those without them e.g. Buganda
8. The trade led to the prominence of the Nyamwezi, Kamba and Yao
9. Led to the decline of traditional skills and industrial structures due to the importation of manufactured goods from overseas/ taking away local artisans
10. Caravan routes paved way for explorers, missionaries and colonialists
11. Led to growth of towns in land, Tabora, Ujiji and Bagamoyo
12. Caravan routes later developed into roads and railway lines
13. The desire to end slave trade led to the coming of Europeans in the 19<sup>th</sup> century

14. It offered an alternative livelihood to the Kamba whose farming activities were affected by drought and poor soils
15. The link between East Africa and the outside world was strengthened
16. Arabs and Swahili investors established plantations around trading settlements in the interior
17. New crops were introduced e.g. rice, maize, wheat, bananas, green pepper etc
18. Increased inter tribal wars due to increased demand for slaves
19. Much devastation and destruction of property and crops due to wars and raids for slaves
20. Heavy depopulation due to massive slave raids e.g. southern Tanzania under the Yao
21. Detribalization and deculturisation due to increased wars and slave raids
22. Loss of confidence in traditional rulers and customs due to slave raids
23. Famine as agricultural production had stopped
24. Led to the introduction of cowrie shells and coins to facilitate transactions
25. Introduction of Arabic architecture and designs in the interior
26. Arabic culture introduced in the interior e.g. dressing and eating habits
27. It led to the spread of Islam in the interior mainly through intermarriages and assimilation in the trading centers and towns inland
28. Some traders moved from the interior to the coast and lost their traditional customs in favour of those they found at the coast
29. It led to the emergence of social misfits like the Ruga- Ruga
30. The Swahili culture and language spread in the interior

**Why did long distance trade decline by the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

1. The death of outstanding leaders who had promoted the trade
2. E.g. Mirambo, Nyungu ya Mawe, Muteesa I in 1884
3. Scarcity and exhaustion of some trade items e.g. ivory
4. Stiff/ acute competition among the communities involved gradually killed the trade

5. Limited transport and communication networks hampered the trade
6. Some African tribes were forced out of the trade by the Arabs
7. The industrial revolution
8. The coming of Christian missionaries and their persistent anti- slave campaigns
9. The abolition of slave trade
10. The colonialists had no room for it
11. The British Anti slave movement sabotaged the trade
12. The anti slave treaties gradually affected this trade
13. The construction of the railway line
14. Insecurity created by the Ruga- Ruga and Maviti bandits, scared traders/ way raid them
15. The Ngoni invasion negatively affected the trade
16. The introduction of legitimate trade as an alternative to slave trade
17. The introduction of guns improved security in the interior
18. Inter- tribal wars in the interior created insecurity
19. Communication problems/ language barrier
20. Hostile tribes like the Masaai who attacked the traders
21. Arabs interfered in the political affairs of some states forcing chiefs to turn against them
22. Tropical diseases e.g. malaria, small pox, sleeping sickness
23. Wild animals
24. Banyans lost money because their debtors were either killed in the interior or jumped payment
25. Heavy taxation

## **SLAVE TRADE**

**Why was there an increase in the volume of slave trade in East Africa during the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

**Why did slave trade in East Africa expand during the mid 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

1. Slave trade is commercial transaction of buying and selling human beings.
2. Slave trade shot up from mid 18<sup>th</sup> century up to the 19<sup>th</sup> century reasons
3. The decline of the gold trade on the coast
4. Slaves were highly demanded world over
5. The Portuguese, Arabs, French and Americans all needed slaves to work as servants, soldiers, miners
6. The coming of more Arabs and Persians into East Africa between the 17<sup>th</sup> and mid 19<sup>th</sup> century
7. The primitive culture of some African societies
8. It was a way of getting rid of criminals, witches and destitute
9. There were no development means of transportation thus goods had to be carried by slaves
10. The profits from the trade were immense/ the trade was profitable
11. Inter- tribal wars in the interior made it easier for the Arabs to obtain slaves
12. Religious prejudices also led to the development of this trade
13. Acquisition of guns that were used for raiding
14. The penetration of the Arabs into the interior
15. Hospitality of Africans to foreigners like Arabs attracted more people who dealt in slave trade
16. The need for foreign goods especially the guns by the interior chiefs
17. The existence of trade routes eased the Arab penetration into the interior and acquisition of slaves
18. Sayyid Said's settlement in Zanzibar in 1840 also expanded slave trade
19. The establishment of cloves in Zanzibar and Pemba increased the demand for slaves
20. The abolition of slave trade in West Africa left East Africa as the only source
21. There was no alternative source of income other than slaves
22. The industrial revolution in Europe increased demand for raw materials to feed the machines
23. The establishment of Zanzibar and Kilwa as a slave markets also increased slave trade
24. At the peak of this trade, the two markets were exporting between 80,000 and 100,000 slaves annually.

## **How did slave trade affect the people of East Africa?**

1. It caused untold suffering and misery
2. Villages were set ablaze
3. Increased wars
4. Due to the introduction of the gun
5. People were detribalized and left homeless
6. Their buyers mistreated slaves
7. Many people were killed through raids and others died on the way to the coast
8. A period of uncertainty set in, as everyone thought he/ she would be the next victim
9. Reduced the dignity of Africans by reducing them to mere goods
10. Tribal laws and customs were disrupted
11. Loss of lives due to the massive raids
12. Resulting into serious depopulation
13. Underdevelopment because the strong men were taken as captives
14. It brought immense wealth and prosperity to those who were involved in it.
15. The Nyamwezi, Yao, kamba and Baganda all enjoyed high standards of living
16. The slave raids soiled the hitherto cordial relations between many African societies
17. Crops were burnt and people deserted their farms resulting into famine
18. Property was destroyed
19. Poverty set in
20. Some societies made as a way of survival like the Yao
21. They found themselves jobless when the trade was stopped/ abolished
22. Strengthened some large societies like Buganda especially those that accessed the gun
23. At the same time caused the decline of small societies due to constant slave raids

24. Chiefs like Tippu Tip, Mirambo and Nyungu ya Mawe became rich and built large commercial empires using wealth from this trade
25. The gun became the key to power and wealth
26. Many young men grouped themselves into warrior bands like the Ruga- Ruga
27. These lived by selling their services to chiefs as mercenaries, used in slave raids
28. More qualitative good introduced
29. Plantations flourished around the slave trading centres
30. New crops were introduced
31. Swahili culture and language were spread in East Africa
32. It led to the decline of local industries and crafts
33. Slave collection centres grew into towns like Tabora, Ujiji, Zanzibar, Mombasa
34. East Africa was connected to the outside world
35. Many Europeans flocked to East Africa to benefit from the trade
36. Later Christianity spread because it preached against slavery
37. The trade provided a pretext for the colonization of East Africa
38. It encouraged large scale trade/ internal and foreign trade
39. Loss of confidence in traditional rulers and customs due to slave raids
40. Detribalization due to intertribal wars
41. Political developments was retarded because those who would have been leaders were either killed or taken away
42. The spread of Islam slowed down because the slave traders were identified with it
43. Slave caravan routes later developed into roads and railway lines

**What led to abolition of slave trade in East Africa during the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

**Why was slave trade abolished?**

1. The British government spearheaded the abolition of slave trade in the 18<sup>th</sup> century
2. Those who championed it included William Wilberforce, Thomas Fowell, Buxton, Grandville Sharp, Thomas Clarkson etc (any two)
3. Who formed an anti-slavery league and voiced their ideas through newspapers, public lectures, parliament etc
4. Had support of the philosophers like Rousseau etc
5. Also with the help of religious groups e.g. Quakers and holy Ghosts Fathers etc
6. Europeans explorers e.g. Jacob Erhardt who drew a map of East Africa with all the geographical features gave detailed information about the interior of East Africa
7. To the humanitarians, slave trade as regarded as evil
8. Dr. Livingstone preached against slavery and slave trade and exposed the destruction caused by slave raids
9. Because of the industrial revolution (due to the discovery of machines) slaves labour became useless
10. The need of raw materials to feed European machines
11. Like cotton, rubber, coffee etc
12. That the slaves were to be repatriated back to reinforce manpower required to produce the needed raw materials
13. Africa was seen as a potential market for the manufactured goods
14. The British navy also played an active role in the abolition of slave trade- patrolled the Indian ocean
15. Captain Fair Fox secured an agreement with Sayyid Said in 1822 which limited slave trade activities to the Arabs world
16. Col. Artikins Hamerton, who was a British consular general in Zanzibar, signed a treaty with Sayyid Said in 1822 which cut off the supply of slaves to the red sea and Arabic port
17. Population increase in Europe made it useless to bring in more people whose services were by this time not needed
18. The abolition of the Trans-Atlantic trade influenced the abolition in East Africa
19. Britain persuaded other nations to abolish slave trade

**How did the abolition of this trade affect East Africa?**

1. Decline of slave trade states e.g. Zanzibar and Nyamwezi
2. Slaves markets lost wealth e.g. Zanzibar
3. Increase in population as there was no more human export
4. There was improved security
5. Human dignity was respected as people were no longer chained or starved etc
6. Improvement in agriculture which reduced famine
7. Led to the coming of foreigners e.g. missionaries, explorers etc
8. Spread of Christianity
9. Loss of independence of the East African states
10. European powers began acquiring colonies
11. Local people hated their traditional rulers who had collaborated with the slave traders
12. Loss of wealth and income to those who greatly depended on it
13. Led to the growth of Legitimate trade
14. Missionaries opened stations for freed slaves
15. Improvement in the transport system e.g. building of Uganda railway
16. Societies which depended on slave raiding found it difficult to adjust to a new life
17. Former trade routes later developed into proper communication lines
18. The intertribal wars that were always fought to acquire slaves were minimized

### **What steps were taken to abolish slave trade in East Africa?**

1. The abolition was dictated by economic and humanitarian factors
2. It was Britain that spearheaded the crusade against slave trade in the 18<sup>th</sup> century
3. In 1772, it became unconstitutional to allow slavery in Britain

4. Leading humanitarians who advocated against it were William Wilberforce, Grandvill Shark the famous Clerkson
5. They formed the anti- slavery league
6. In 1807 the forced the British parliament to make slaves trade illegal for the British subjects
7. In 1815 the British navy started to patrol the Indian ocean to check on the shipment of slaves
8. In 1817 the governor Mauritius signed an agreement with the ruler of Madagascar to stop shipment of slaves from Mauritius to Madagascar
9. Later in 1822, the Moresby treaty was signed between sayyid Said and captain Fair Fox Moresby
10. This was to stop slave trade with India in East Africa
11. Slaves from East Africa were also not to be sent out side Sayyid Said's territory
12. In 1833 the state of slavery was abolished in all British controlled areas
13. In 1845 the Hamerton treaty was signed between colonel Artikins and sultan of Zanzibar
14. This aimed at stopping salve exports from Zanzibar to Oman and limiting slave dhows from moving northwards beyond Brava
15. Form 1850 Christianity was introduced to try to stop slave trade
16. In March 1873, the Frere treaty was signed with Sultan Barghash and this closed the Zanzibar slave market
17. It also made slave trade illegal in all parts of the sultan dominion
18. By 1876, Barghash freed all slaves and they were to enjoy the right of protection
19. By 1889 treaty which was signed between Khalif and the British, all persons entering the sultan's territory after 1<sup>st</sup> November were to be free
20. In 1890, Zanzibar became a British protectorate
21. In 1897, slavery was abolished in Zanzibar and Pemba
22. In 1907 slavery was abolished in all British East African territories
23. Infrastructure was also developed to discourage slave trade
24. Legitimate trade was also encouraged to help stop slave trade
25. In 1921 the complete abolition of slave trade was achieved when Britain took over Tanganyika as a mandated territory after world war I

**Why did the abolition of slave trade prove so difficult before 1873?**

**What problems/ obstacles were faced in the abolition of slave trade?**

**What were the difficulties faced during the abolition of slave trade.**

1. It was a profitable trade for African chiefs and kings
2. No alternative sources of income to those engaged in it
3. The Arabs and Swahilis found it profitable and they could not abandon it
4. The British anti slave lacked personnel
5. Europeans anti slave crusaders lacked funds
6. There was no political will and cooperation on the part of some European countries e.g. Portugal
7. Britain single handedly shouldered the campaign
8. Indian ocean through which slaves passed was too wide to patrol
9. There was lack of equipment on the part of the anti slave crusaders
10. Slave traders used American flags to transport slaves to disguise themselves
11. Trading activities went unchecked
12. Said Sayyid didn't want to anger those who were engaged in it
13. Said Sayyid his followers like Majid were reluctant to enforce the anti- slave trade
14. Most attention was put at the coast and little was done in the interior the heart of slave trade
15. Hence no land patrols in the interior
16. Lack of alternative means of transport other than the slaves
17. Slavery an acceptable African practice, hence many chiefs had no problem with it
18. No thorough resettlement programme was made before the process kicked off e.g. no land, property or employment
19. Arab slave traders were well armed and could fight hence feared
20. Freed slaves were also reluctant to be free

21. Wild animals threatened the few abolitionists
22. Hostile tribes like the Nandi, Yao and Maasai
23. Language barrier
24. Tropical diseases like malaria also scared the abolitionists
25. Lack of geographical knowledge by the anti- slave squadron
26. Geographical barriers
27. Existence of harsh climatic conditions
28. Sometimes the slave dealers threw slaves in water (ocean) whenever they met the anti- slave squadron
29. There was no immediate substitute to slave trade

## **TOPIC 8**

### **EUROPEAN ACTIVITIES IN EAST AFRICA**

**Why were European countries interested in the colonization of east Africa?**

**Why did Europeans acquire colonies in East Africa during the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

**Why did the Germans and the British struggle to control East Africa in the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

1. Due to political, economical and social factors
2. Was part of the struggle that had its roots in Europe itself
3. E.g. following French defeat in the Franco- Prussian war (1870-1)
4. Emergence of Germany as a major upset to the balance of power
5. It was part of general scramble for territory in Africa at that time
6. East Africa was seen to be of economic potential
7. Possible source of raw material to feed industrial Europe

8. The search for a consumer market
9. Potential area for investment
10. East Africa was also a strategic importance
11. The link for the Suez, Egypt, the Nile and Uganda
12. Pressure from chartered companies
13. They had representatives like Carl Peters (GEACO) and William Mackinnon (IBEACo)
14. Mounting pressure for protection of missionaries, traders etc
15. Leopold's activities in the Congo alarmed the British and Germans in East Africa
16. Importance of Sultanate from Zanzibar
17. Carl Peters arrival and signing treaties with Mwanga alarmed the British
18. Hence William Mackinnon's counter
19. The role played by Otto Von Bismarck of German
20. The Berlin conference (1844- 45)
21. The desire to spread western civilization
22. Education
23. To spread Christianity
24. Need to settle surplus population

**What were the results of colonial rule on the people of East Africa?**

1. They were immediate and long term
2. Africans lost their independence e.g. Zanzibar, Uganda, Kenya in 1890
3. The commercial importance of Zanzibar ended
4. German rule was formalized in Tanganyika
5. Many chiefs were stripped of their powers e.g. Kabalega was deported to Seychelles islands
6. Ended slave trade leading to legitimate trade

7. Intertribal wars in the interior ended
8. Colonial rule was established in East Africa
9. Resources were exploited by Europeans
10. Wide spread rebellions e.g. Maji- Maji, Mau Mau, Abushiri, Hehe etc
11. Led to the rise of nationalism as people started revolting against German rule
12. Colonial rule in Tanganyika was so harsh and cruel hence hated by Africans
13. Africans were subjected to forced labour on plantations and public work
14. There was heavy taxation
15. A hut tax of 3 rupees was imposed
16. Forced cash crop growing
17. Africans were subjected to forced labor
18. Wide spread discontent and resentment especially against the Akidas in TZ
19. People were brutalized and humiliated
20. African cultures and customs were lost
21. Tribal institutions were destroyed
22. Loss of lives by resistors e.g. Kinjikele Ngwale
23. Destruction of property
24. It led to break down of tribal
25. German rule divided Africans into collaborators and resistors
26. Wide spread of conflicts and wars
27. Famine broke out due to forced cash crop growing and the scorched earth policy
28. Africans were edged out of trade
29. Africans lost a lot of their land to the German settlers
30. African traders like the Nyamwezi were edged out of trade
31. Africans lived in fear and panic
32. After 1904 the German changed their system from direct to indirect

33. Many powerful local chiefs were appointed as Akidas
34. Africans interests became paramount and settlers became secondary
35. Forced labour reduced
36. The Akidas were sacked
37. Roads, ports and railway lines were developed to ease transportation
38. Germans reformed the administration after the Maji-Maji rebellion
39. Germans adopted a dialogue as opposed to force
40. Western civilization was spread through building schools and churches
41. Health facilities were also improved
42. Led to the spread of Christianity except at the coast
43. Colonial rule undermined African cultures
44. White settlers poured in to East Africa especially Kenya
45. Cash crop growing was started
46. Ended the conflicts between the Germans and British over East Africa
47. Indirect and direct rule were established
48. Divided and ruled African societies
49. Long distance trade collapsed
50. Creation of tribalism and rivalry among societies

### **How did Uganda become a British Protectorate?**

### **How was East Africa partitioned between 1884 and 1890?**

1. The British desire to control Uganda was part of the general scramble for colonies in Africa
2. In 1884, the Berlin conference formally gave East Africa to the Germans and the British
3. Carl Peters in 1885 took over Tanganyika on behalf of German making British take over Kenya
4. In 1886 the first Anglo German Agreement was signed

5. East Africa was divided among the Germans and the British
6. In 1889 Peter visited Buganda and signed a treaty with Mwanga on behalf of the British
7. The treaty friendship was opposed by the Protestant group
8. The Protestant group called on the IBEACo to come to Uganda
9. The IBEACo signed an agreement with Mwanga on behalf of the British
10. With the agreement signed a would be Anglo- German clash was avoided
11. In 1890, the Heligoland treaty was signed
12. This recognized Uganda as a British area of control
13. IBEACo was allowed to administer Uganda
14. Lugard in 1890 came to act as an agent of the company
15. Protestants preferred British while the Catholics preferred German or French rule
16. Lugard sided with the Protestants against the Catholics and the Catholics were defeated in the religious war
17. Protestants stood up the political ladder in Uganda
18. IBEACo ran bankrupt and wanted to withdrawal from Uganda
19. This forced the British to takeover direct control
20. And in 1894 a protectorate was declared over Uganda (Buganda)

**What were the major causes of the Anglo- conflicts between 1885 and 1890?**

**What led to the Anglo- German conflicts in East Africa during the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

1. This was a period of the scramble and partition
2. There was conflict between the British East African Association
3. Over an area of about 300kms inland from the coast
4. Both Britain and Germany wanted to control the resources in that area i.e 300kms

5. G.E.A.A took over the area yet the BEAA had reached agreement with sultan Bargash to trade in the main land.
6. Germany was afraid that the British might join with the British south African Company to force her out of Tanganyika
7. Britain was also afraid that German Witu Company might link up with GEACo in Uganda and push them out of Kenya
8. Between 1886 – 1890, there was a race for Uganda
9. In 1890, Carl Peters signed a friendship treaty with Mwanga this worried the British
10. Fredrick Jackson tried to secure a similar treaty but Kabaka Mwanga refused
11. When it was rumoured that the German commissioner would visit Buganda, the British anxiety increased (heightened)
12. Between 1887 and 1889, the Mahdi besieged Emin Pasha- the Egyptian Equatorial Governor
13. Carl Peters heard that Jackson was on the way to relieve the siege, which would mean that the area would be taken over by Britain
14. However, Stanley rescued Emin Pasha before either Peters or Jackson arrived
15. In 1888 the IBEACo took over the job of protecting the British interests in East Africa

### **How were the conflicts solved?**

### **Explain the effects of this conflict on the peoples of East Africa**

1. The conflicts led to negotiations between German and Britain
2. These were the Anglo- German agreement of 1886
3. And the Anglo German agreement of 1890
4. By the 1886 agreement the Sultans dominion were limited to a 10 mile coastal strip
5. The Sultan also acquired the towns of Brava, Kismuyu and Merca
6. The German sphere influence was to consist of the area beyond the 10 miles coastal strip from R. Ruvuma in the south to R. Umba on the foothills of Mt. Kilimanjaro
7. The British sphere of influence comprised the area north of R. Umba

8. Witu in modern Kenya was to be a German enclave
9. But the 1886 agreement did not cater for Uganda, which led to another scramble
10. The result was the 1890 agreement (Heligoland treaty) by which Britain got Uganda
11. While German received Heligoland in compensation
12. The 10 mile coastal strip reverted to the Germans
13. The Germans gave up Witu to the British
14. Zanzibar, Pemba and Mafia were to be under British
15. The line from Umtata was extended westwards across L.victoria
16. Uganda was declared a British protectorate
17. The Uganda- Tanganyika border was extended westwards to Congo border
18. The 1890 agreement virtually solved the conflict between Germany and Britain.
19. Effective occupation by colonial governments ended the conflict

**Explain the role of explorers in the colonization of East Africa?**

1. Explorers were European travelers who came to adventure more about the dark continent
2. They included John Speke, James Grant, Henry Morton Stanley, Samuel Baker, Richard Burton, Dr. David Livingstone etc (any two)
3. They exaggerated the wealth and economic potential in East Africa e.g. the reliable rainfall, the fertile soils, minerals etc
4. They exposed the horrors of slave trade hence arousing the desire to end this evil trade e.g. Dr. David Livingstone
5. Some served as colonial administrators e.g. Sir Samuel Baker became the governor of the Equatorial province
6. Some built forts, which were later used as administrative centers by the colonialists e.g. Sir Samuel Baker built one at Potoko
7. They discovered routes and navigable waters, which simplified the movement of future colonialists
8. Some drew maps, which aroused European curiosity about East Africa e.g. Jacob Erhardt

9. They refocused the attention of Europeans on East Africa by destroying the wrong impression Europe had about Africa in general
10. They provided geographical information about East Africa
11. Such included the strategic and economic position of East Africa
12. Speke discovered the source of the Nile which was of great importance to the colonialists
13. They discovered Uganda's physical features
14. Some signed treaties with African chiefs, on behalf of their societies like RGS and home governments. E.g. Stanley, Karl Peters
15. Stanley formally requested Muteesa to invite missionaries to Uganda yet these were fore runners of the colonialists.
16. They established well- working relations with African chiefs. Stanley through his friendship with Muteesa managed to convince him to invite the missionaries.
17. They also gave information about hostile and accommodative societies
18. They provided funds and logistical support to those who were travelling to Africa. E.g. the Royal Geographical society sponsored the trips of Speke and Grant
19. The success of their adventurous missions led to increased missionary interest in EA
20. Called for legitimate trade which hastened colonialism e.g. Dr. David Livingstone
21. Called for European civilization in East Africa

**Explain the role of the Chartered Companies/ traders in the colonization of East Africa**

1. In the colonization of East Africa, traders were a very big influence
2. These traders came under the umbrella of trading/ chartered companies
3. The main chartered companies were GEACo and IBEACo
4. IBEACo was formed in 1888 and GEACo in 1884
5. They promoted legitimate trade the profits of which attracted the colonialists
6. They stopped slave trade and East Africa became peaceful
7. Promoted agriculture upon which the colonial economy thrived

8. Provided information regarding East Africa's minerals and other resources
9. Protected missionaries who were the fore runners of colonialism
10. They signed treaties with the African chiefs
11. Quelled/ fought African resistance
12. Set up administration quarters, forts and garrisons like Old Kampala, Rabai Mpya etc
13. Setup infrastructures like roads, railways etc which were used by the colonialists
14. Provided administrators to rule on behalf of the colonial masters e.g. FD Lugard
15. When they became bankrupted they surrendered their charters to their home governments
16. Their rivalries brought in the colonialists e.g. the GEACo and the IBEACo over areas in east Africa between 1884 to 1890
17. Provided guns to Africans chiefs or collaborators
18. They provided funds to administer their areas of influence
19. Provided information regarding East Africa's hostile tribes and the colonialists tried to avoid them
20. Gave gifts and jobs to the natives of East Africa
21. Divided Africans which made Europeans rule easy

### **What problems did chartered companies face in East Africa?**

### **Why had the companies collapsed by 1914?**

1. Lack of funds- they couldn't fund their economic activities due to unreliable donors
2. Lack of manpower/ administrators
3. Lack of medical facilities e.g. drugs, hospitals
4. Lack of supplies from home e.g. food stuff and fire arms
5. Poor means of transport/ no developed roads and railways
6. Lack of cooperation from local traders e.g. slave traders
7. Poor means of communication- had no way of communicating back home

8. Poor accommodation due to poor housing conditions
9. Harsh climatic conditions especially floods and prolonged drought
10. Rivalry between the trading companies
11. Stiff competition among the colonialists themselves i.e. British and Germans
12. Interference by slave traders e.g. Arabs and Swahili traders
13. Wild animals in the thick forests
14. Faced a problem of religious wars
15. Lacked geographical knowledge
16. Language barriers
17. Faced constant rebellions from hostile Africans e.g. Kabalega
18. Tropical diseases e.g. malaria, yellow fever since they lacked health facilities
19. Mismanagement and inefficiency/ they had poor and inexperienced managers
20. Hostility from Africans who resisted their activities e.g. maji- Maji led to collapse of companies
21. Company activities were restricted by their home governments and this hindered their economic progress
22. Limited natural resources contrary to what they expected before
23. Lack of marketable commodities/ lack of a steady source of income
24. Conflicting interest- business vs. administration
25. The need to establish direct and effective colonial administration forced the companies to withdrawal

**Explain the role played by the following in the colonization of East Africa**

**Fredrick Lugard**

1. He was the first administrator of the IBEACo
2. Was a retired army officer in India
3. Won an agent of the IBEA company

4. His duty was defending British colonial interests in Uganda
5. Signed a protection treaty with Mwanga
6. Led expedition against Buganda in December 1890
7. 1891 with a Christian army defeated Buganda Muslims on the Bunyoro border
8. Then marched into Toro
9. Driving out the Banyoro army and restoring Kasagama
10. Went to lake Edward afterwards
11. Persuaded Selim Bey Sudanese soldiers to enlist in his force
12. He built several forts on the Toro- Bunyoro border and in Buganda
13. Used some Sudanese soldiers to maintain the forts
14. Intervened in the battle of Mengo (Jan- 18- 1891)
15. Fighting on the Protestant side
16. Mwanga and the catholic chiefs fled to Bulingugwe
17. Entered into treaty with Ankole (1891) making it company territory
18. 1892 signed another treaty with Mwanga, giving him official political control
19. 1922 wrote a guideline book on colonial admission “The Dual mandate in tropical Africa”
20. Became a yardstick of British administration
21. Through the IBEA company finance colonial interests
22. IBEA Co and GEI Co rivalry led to treaty of 1886
23. Later on the Heligoland treaty (1890)
24. Went back to Britain (1892) and vigorously campaigned for the British retention of Uganda

### **Carl Peters**

1. A pioneer German colonial ambitions
2. Founded the German east African company (GEA Co)
3. A brain child of the German colonization society (1884)

4. Was also known for his trading activities
5. 1885 the company received a charter from Germany
6. He signed several treaties with African chiefs in E. Africa
7. In Usambara, Kilimanjaro
8. With Mumia of Kenya
9. And Mwanga of Buganda (1890)
10. These treaties brought these areas under German control/ sphere of influence
11. And were presented at the Berlin conference in 1884/5
12. They enabled Germany to acquire Usagara, Urugulu, Ukami and Uzigwa
13. Later German acquired Witu and part of the kilimanajro district
14. Financed the administration
15. And provided protectorate manpower
16. Rivalry with IBEACo of William macknnon (and Lugard) led to the Anglo- German treaty of 1886
17. Further rivalries led to the Helogoland treaty of 1890
18. Following coastal revolts the German gov't took over control
19. By the company had grown bankrupt and ineffective

## **MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA**

### **Why did the Christian missionaries come to East Africa during the 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

1. Christian missionaries were sent to East Africa by different religious groups namely LMS, CMS, Mill Hill fathers, Methodist fathers, Verona fathers, White fathers, Holy Ghost fathers
2. The evangelical revival in Europe encouraged missionaries to come to East Africa
3. To spread Christianity
4. To spread western civilization

5. To promote western education
6. To stop slavery and slave trade
7. To resettle and rehabilitate the freed slaves
8. To pave way for the coming of the colonialists
9. To check on the spread of Islam'
10. To promote Legitimate trade
11. To explore the interior of East Africa/ adventure
12. Livingstone's writings increased European interest in Africa
13. They were encouraged by the different accounts of early travelers e.g. Stanley
14. Their desire for exploration and adventure e.g. Krapft and Rebmann
15. They were invited by Kabaka Muteesa of Buganda
16. The industrial revolution led to the discovery of quinine encouraging missionaries to come without fear
17. To create a civil society and do away with barbaric activities like killing twins
18. Encouraged by the good reports from explorers

**Describe the Missionary activities in East Africa between 1877 and 1900**

1. Missionaries carried out different activities which affected the lives of the Africans socially, politically and economically
2. Many activities were positive but others were negative
3. Carried out evangelization and tried to convert many people to Christianity
4. Built churches as opposed to traditional shrines
5. Built schools e.g. Gayaza, Namilyango, Kisubi, Buddo

6. Carried out exploration work e.g. Dr. John Krapft, Rebmann, Dr. Livingstone
7. Opened up mission stations like Rabai, Bagamoyo, Tabora and Kampala
8. Set up homes for freed slaves and taught them practical skills
9. Identified hospitable and hostile African societies and informed their home government accordingly
10. Helped in the signing of agreements like the 1900 Buganda agreement
11. Promoted legitimate trade
12. Translated the Bible into local languages
13. Built hospitals e.g. Rubaga, Mengo, Nsambya
14. Acted as a link between the Ganda rulers and the British colonialists
15. Contributed to the final abolition of slave trade
16. Divided Africans along religious lines
17. Acted as of colonial rule
18. Preached against traditional customs
19. Encouraged the growing of cash crops
20. Built roads and bridges and improved on transport
21. Encouraged new architecture / vocational skills
22. Financed chartered companies
23. Encouraged modern methods of agriculture
24. Taught foreign languages to Africans

**What problems/ challenges did Christian missionaries face in East Africa?**

1. Thick impenetrable forests
2. Difficult terrain- rapids and falls/ geographical barriers
3. Unfavourable climate

4. Tropical diseases e.g. malaria, small pox etc
5. Hostile tribes e.g. Nandi and Masaai
6. Inadequate supplies e.g. medicine, food, fresh water etc
7. Lack of funds
8. Language barriers
9. Hostility from Islam
10. Wild animals e.g. lions and leopards
11. They were too few/ limited numbers
12. Poor transport/ no roads and vehicles
13. Poor means of communication with mother country
14. Opposition from the slave traders e.g. Abushiri, Isike of Unyanyembe
15. Some missionaries intervened in the political and judicial processes that were beyond their spiritual jurisdiction and competence, hence endangering their own lives
16. Resistance from land owners who were not happy with the establishment of stations, schools and churches over their own land
17. Christian practices often conflicted with African traditions e.g. monogamy vs. polygamy, Christianity vs. Lubaleism etc
18. Rivalry among the Christian missions and societies e.g. the Wingleza- Wafransa in Buganda
19. Traditional leaders saw them as a threat to their authority e.g. Mwanga killed Bishop Hannington and the Uganda martyrs in 1885
20. Others saw them as a threat to their economic way of life
21. Others mistook them for people with military assistance e.g. Muteesa
22. While others thought they were slave traders
23. Unfaithful porters stole missionary property
24. Lack of literature for their converts to read
25. Lack of geographical knowledge about the interior
26. General lack of law and order which created insecurity for them

## 27. Hostility from traditionalists

### **What were the effects of missionary activities in Uganda?**

1. Many people were converted to Christianity
2. By 1911 around 280,000 Christians in Buganda alone
3. Churches as opposed to traditional shrines were built
4. Encouraged general literacy – 3RS
5. Built schools e.g. Gayaza, Namilyango, Kisubi, Buddo
6. Tried to elevate the status of women through domestic science e.g. at Gayaza
7. Technical and vocational education introduced e.g. carpentry, bricklaying
8. Introduction of a printing press
9. Promoted the writing of African languages e.g. Luganda, Kiswahili
10. Improved the health through building hospitals. E.g. Rubaga, Mengo, Nsambya
11. Introduced plantation agriculture/ a cash crop economy
12. Improved farming methods e.g. use of fertilizers, crop rotation etc
13. Introduced new cash crops like coffee, cotton, sisal, pyrethrum, rubber
14. Introduced new/ western styles of dressing, dancing and eating
15. Introduced new languages like Latin, German and English
16. Many Africans were killed during religious wars
17. The death of the Uganda martyrs in 1886
18. Divided the Buganda society along religious lines
19. This was also to influence national politics in 1950s, 60s and 80s
20. Products of missionary education were later to champion nationalistic struggles
21. E.g. Ben Kiwanuka, Ignituis K Musaaazi, Dr. A M Obote etc
22. Christianity undermined traditional practices e.g. marriage, dance, funerals etc

23. They fought slave trade and slavery
24. They also set up homes for freed slaves and taught them practical skills
25. They paved way for European colonialism/ the flag followed the cross
26. They influenced some local leaders to collaborate with the colonial administrators e.g. Apollo Kagwa, Kakungulu, Mbaguta, miti
27. Christianity softened the hearts/ minds of Africans and thus weakened African political power
28. Missionaries also promoted legitimate trade
29. Built infrastructure like roads to open up the interior for legitimate trade
30. Created employment opportunities for many Africans clerks, teachers, nurses
31. Opened up mission stations that later developed into towns like Rabai, Bagamoyo, Tabora, Kampala
32. They engaged in the politics of many societies. In Buganda, they helped in the overthrow of Mwanga, fuelled the famous W'Ingeleza-W'Fransa wars
33. Carried out exploration work e.g. Dr. John Krapft, Rebmann, Dr. Livingstone

### **Role of missionaries in the colonization of East Africa**

1. Missionaries have been identified as having played a very big role in the colonization of East Africa
2. Missionary groups which came to East Africa included LMS, CMS, Mill Hill fathers, Methodist fathers, Verona fathers, White fathers, Holy Ghost fathers (any two)
3. The role they played was either direct or indirect
4. At first they worked as religious people but later became agents of imperialism
5. Some lured African chiefs into signing treaties of protection. E.g. Bishop Tucker assisted in signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement
6. They softened the hearts and minds of Africans
7. Their teachings humbled Africans and so became vulnerable to the colonizers
8. They preached Christianity and advised Africans to accept colonial rule

9. They often invited their home governments to occupy areas where they worked
10. In case of hostility, they called for home protection e.g. during the religious wars
11. They also gave information about hostile and accommodative societies
12. They set up infrastructure like roads, bridges and railways
13. They built schools, for effective occupation and vehicles of indoctrination
14. Their western education prepared Africans to be agents of colonialism
15. Provided health services by building health centres that reduced on the white man's burden
16. Helped to stop slave trade hence creating a conducive atmosphere for colonial rule
17. They promoted legitimate trade in order to protect the economic interests of their home governments
18. Promoted agriculture and laid the foundation upon which the colonial economy thrived
19. Their teachings pitted the kings against their subjects, leading to loss of the king's powers
20. Sent information home governments about the economic potential of East Africa i.e. raw materials that attracted the colonialists
21. Their education and teachings created a class of collaborators i.e. clerks and interpreters. Such people included Semei Kakungulu, Mbaguta and Apollo Kagwa
22. Encouraged the use of foreign languages e.g. English and translated many books into African languages. This later made communication with the colonialists easy.
23. In Buganda, they involved themselves in the overthrow of local rulers e.g. Mwanga was overthrown by a combined force of missionaries
24. They financed colonial agents e.g. IBEACo in 1891, the CMS missionaries injected in it £50,000 that enabled it to run for one year.
25. They polarized the African societies. In Buganda, they divided people along religious lines hence weakening them.
26. They effected the doctrine of effective occupation as demanded by the Berlin Act of 1884- 85/ served as men on spot
27. Built mission stations in Kenya and Uganda which acted as administrative points
28. They scrambled for areas of interest which were later handed over to their home governments
29. Informed the colonialists about the hostility of some tribes where colonization started

30. Missionaries who had learnt African languages were used as interpreters and translators for the colonialists
31. Carried out exploration to discover navigable rivers, areas of economic potential to their home governments e.g. Livingstone, Rebmann and Krapft.
32. Missionaries refused to criticize their home governments for mistakes committed on Africans

### **Why did Muteesa I invite Christians missionaries to Buganda?**

1. In 1875 Henry M. Stanley visited Muteesa and had discussion with him at his palace
2. Stanley convinced Muteesa to write a letter to the Queen of England requesting for missionary work in Buganda
3. In 1877, the first group of missionaries arrived i.e. the CMS
4. In 1879, the Roman Catholics arrived in Buganda
5. He hoped their presence would enhance his prestige among fellow African chiefs
6. He hoped they would give him guns to strengthen his military position
7. He expected military assistance against his traditional enemy- Bunyoro (Kabalega)
8. He wanted them to teach Christianity to his people
9. He also expected gifts in form of clothes, mirrors, glassware
10. He was tired of the threats and demands from the traditionalists and Muslims
11. He also expected help from against his Egyptian oppressors
12. He hoped to gain from them in terms of knowledge and technical skills
13. He expected them to teach his people how to read and write
14. He also wanted his people to trade with them
15. As a friendly and diplomatic king, Muteesa welcomed the missionaries
16. He wanted to establish diplomatic ties with their countries of origin
17. He wanted modernization and westernization

## **Why did king Mwanga fallout with the missionaries between 1885- 1900?**

1. Mwanga assumed power after the death of his father in 1884
2. He was only 18 years and hence inexperienced
3. On top of being young, he was erratic, brutal, emotional and weak minded
4. Came to power at a time when Christian missionaries and the muslims were struggling for domination
5. Islam was introduced by the Arabs in 1840. Catholicism in 1879, Anglicanism in 1877
6. The rate of conversion to Christianity was also alarming
7. The fear was worsened when Arabs also warned him about his dealings with the missionaries whom they believed were agents of the Imperialists
8. He also looked at the missionaries as a threat to his power and authority
9. He was also not diplomatic like his late father
10. He failed to play one group against the other unable to contain the pressure from them
11. Because of his failure to control the different religious groups, conflicts cropped up among them
12. He was equally alarmed by the increasing European interest in East Africa
13. He had a natural hatred against the missionaries
14. The Germans had occupied Tanganyika in 1884 and hence alarmed Mwanga about Europeans and their intentions
15. 1884- 1885 was a time for European scramble and partition of Africa
16. He also failed to establish a good working relationship with the local chiefs
17. Chiefs exploited his weakness and warned him about the Christian missionaries
18. He ordered all his subjects not to deal with the missionaries
19. When they refused his orders, Mwanga used his authority to execute 3 CMS converts in January 1885
20. In November the same year, he ordered for the murder of Bishop Hannington in Busoga
21. On 3<sup>rd</sup> June 1886, he ordered the execution of 30 christian converts at Namugongo

22. For refusing his homosexual advances and giving up their new faith
23. The mistrust among various Christian groups themselves worsened the conflicts
24. The rumour that Mwanga was struggling to get rid of all the christians and muslims
25. The struggle by each group to win converts
26. The struggle to win favour or recognition by the Kabaka
27. Religious conflicts in Europe
28. Imperial rivalry between France and Britain
29. The Christians didn't want to be dominated by the Moslems
30. The traditionalists also did not want christians for they undermined their values and religion
31. The involvement of Captain Lugard in the conflicts in 1892
32. He helped the Protestants to defeat Mwanga and the Catholics
33. In 1894 the British declared a protectorate over Buganda and Uganda
34. In 1897 Mwanga and his chiefs protested against the British but in vain
35. In august 1897, Mwanga was overthrown and replaced by his infant son Daudi Chwa II
36. Later he fled to lango and joined Kabalega in the struggle against British imperialism
37. Unfortunately the two were captured and exiled to Seychelles islands
38. He died in exile in 1903

### **What were the causes of the Wafaransa Ingleza wars in Uganda?**

### **Why were there religious conflicts between 1885 – 1900?**

1. These were religious wars fought between the different religious groups in Uganda
2. They took place between 1885 and 1900
3. They involved the catholics from France and the protestants from Britain
4. They also involved the moslems and traditionalists
5. The appearance of several religious groups i.e. Muslims, catholics, Protestants and traditionalists

6. Each religion wanted to win converts
7. Each religion wanted to win more offices
8. Each wanted to win the favours of the king/ they started speaking of evil of each other
9. Catholics accused the Protestants that they wanted Mwanga to accept IBEACo because the company would help the Protestants against the Catholics
10. When Mwanga was exiled in Kabula there was a rumour that he was with Mackay learning Protestantism
11. Some leading catholics said it was better to fight them than being ruled by the protestants
12. Western religion was brought by rival colonial master/ imperial rivalry between France and Britian
13. Religious conflicts in Europe were extended to the colonies
14. Christianity condemned traditional religion and customs
15. The Christians didn't want to be dominated by the muslims
16. Pages at the royal court belonged to different groups led by prominent and overzealous converts
17. Religious political division continued in the regiments of ex pages established by Mwanga
18. Distrust between the various Christian groups as revealed by the division of offices of among the Protestants and Catholics
19. The death of Muteesa I in 1884 left a vacuum in Buganda leadership
20. The disagreements among the various pages in the king's court
21. Differences in the liturgies or teaching of the 4 groups
22. The rise of Mwanga, his arrogance and inconsistencies
23. Mwanga,s failure to control foreigners at his court
24. His killings e.g. Uganda martyrs at Namugongo
25. Involvement of Captain lugard and the IBEACo

**Describe the course of the religious wars in Buganda between 1885- 1900**

1. These were the Christian, Muslim and traditional religious wars in Buganda in 1890

2. The missionaries had arrived in Buganda from 1877 when the CMS came in
3. The Roman catholic arrived two years later in 1879
4. These two Christian factions were soon competing for political influence at the Kabaka's court
5. This was the situation which Kabaka Mwanga found after succeeding his father Muteesa I who had died in 1884
6. The Arabs sent Muslim factions in Buganda took advantage of their long stay in Buganda to warn Kabaka Mwanga that the christians wanted to take over his kingdom
7. Kabaka Mwanga responded by pushing those who refused to denounce the new religions
8. Bishop Hannington was murdered during that crisis of 1885
9. In 1886 many more Christian converts were burnt at Namugongo
10. Sensing continued instability, Kabaka Mwanga planned to chase away all religious factions from Buganda i.e. Christians and Muslims alike
11. But they discovered his plans and combined to overthrow him, there after they installed Kiwewa
12. By this time, the Muslims were the strongest factions, they soon deposed Kiwewa for refusing to be circumcised
13. Kalema was installed, the Muslims started precutting the christain and they fled to kabula (then in Nkore)
14. The catholics came under Nyonyintono Honerat, while the protestants came under Apollo Kagwa
15. The Christian faction came back and deposed the Muslims, Mwanga was reinstated with a lot of catholic sympathies in 1890
16. In the same year (1890), Lugard arrived in Uganda as a representative of the IBEACo, he used the Protestant missionaries to influence Mwanga for a treaty
17. There after, he armed the Christians and followed the Muslims to Bunyoro were he had fled

**What were the effects of these wars in Uganda up to 1960s?**

**How did these conflicts affect the people of Uganda?**

1. Loss of lives

2. 30 christian converts were burnt in 1886 at Namugongo
3. Destruction of property e.g. banana plantations
4. General insecurity in Buganda
5. Just to protect themselves the Christians formed two armed groups
6. By 1880s they urged their home govt. to colonize Uganda in order to protect their lives and interests and those of their converts
7. Christians became identified with Britain and France
8. In 1892 fighting broke out between the wafaransa and Wa Ingleza groups (the battle of Mengo)
9. Chief offices in Buganda were divided according to religion
10. Formation of political parties along religious lines DP for catholics and UPC for protestants
11. The catholics and Mengo were sidelined by the Buganda administration and forced into political inferiority
12. Schools were run on denominational sectarianism
13. There existed rivalry between schools of different religious denomination
14. Mwanga was forced into exile
15. Kiwewa and Kalema were overthrown by the religious denomination
16. Mwanga became confused and did not know each religion to follow/ he kept changing his alliance from one time to another
17. Some Baganda became prominent as a result of the wars e.g. Kaggwa, Zakariya, Kisigiri
18. Wars checked the spread of islam
19. Led to the signing of Buganda agreement to stop the religious wars
20. Led to discrimination in civil services
21. Buganda was divided between the protestants, muslims and catholics
22. The protestants took the central counties of Kyaggwe, Kyaddondo, Busiro, mawokota and the traditionalists lost
23. The catholics were given Buddu and muslims Butambala and Gomba
24. There to be two Katikiros one a protestant and one a catholic but this ended in 1900 when the Katikiro was confirmed as a protestant

25. They increased the disunity that had been created by British indirect rule
26. They ended Buganda independence
27. Dominance of political by the protestants
28. Christianity and islam weakened Buganda traditional religion
29. They led to the colonization of Uganda
30. Religious became an important factor in Buganda politics
31. Christianity was spread world wide
32. Divided the Ganda society and later the whole of Uganda along religious lines
33. Created enmity between the followers of the different religion
34. The wars were won by the protestants

## **Topic 9**

### **THE ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL RULE**

**Describe the methods used by the British to establish their rule in Uganda**

**What methods were used by the British in establishing their rule over Uganda between 1894 – 1920?**

1. The method used depended on the circumstances
2. At times more than one method was used
3. Treaty signing e.g. the 1900 Buganda agreement
4. Use of force/ direct military confrontation
5. Collaborators/ African opportunists
6. Intimidation and threats to scare off would be resistors
7. Military support

8. Divide and rule
9. Ineffective rule
10. Indirect rule
11. Putting up infrastructure
12. Building of military stations
13. Use of Christian missionaries
14. Use of traders and trading companies
15. Use of explorers and geographers
16. Signing of agreements among themselves
17. Mutual cooperation and help
18. Use of strong and efficient imperialists
19. Use of gifts

### **How was British rule extended in Uganda up to 1920?**

1. July 1890, the Heligoland treaty was signed between the British and the Germans
2. To define the western boundary of their spheres of influence
3. The agreement made Uganda and Kenya British spheres and under the IBEA company
4. In March 1893, the IBEACo was withdrawn
5. June 1894, Uganda was formally declared a British protectorate
6. However, this protectorate was confined to Buganda
7. Dec 1895, Busoga signed an agreement with the British, which brought Busoga under the British protectorate
8. March 1900, the Buganda agreement signed between Johnson and three Buganda chiefs
9. It stripped the Kabaka of his powers and confirmed Buganda as a British protectorate
10. It also acted as the basis for the spread of colonial rule to other parts of Uganda

11. June, 1900 a similar agreement was signed with Omukama Daudi Kasagama of Toro
12. Under this agreement, Toro also accepted to be part of the Uganda protectorate
13. Aug 1901, the Ankole agreement was signed between Sir Harry H. Johnston and the prime minister of Ankole-Nuwa Mbaguta
14. The agreement made Ankole also part of the protectorate and further expanded it
15. No agreement was signed with Bunyoro because of Kabalega's hostility to British interests
16. But after his defeat, Baganda agents like Miti were sent there to help the British in the administration of the area but most of these met a lot of resistance from the local people
17. At the same time, Semei Kakungulu was busy extending British influence in eastern Uganda
18. By 1901, he had annexed Bugisu, Bukedi, Busoga, Teso and Kumam
19. The British, who had initially neglected the North, started opening up administrative posts
20. These were built in Kumi, Palango in Lango (1910), Gulu (1910) and Kitgum (1912)
21. By 1911, almost the whole Lango was under British rule
22. After crushing the Lamogi rebellion British rule was established in Acholi
23. In 1913, military rule was established in Karamoja
24. By 1914 West Nile (Arua) was annexed to the British protectorate (from Sudan)
25. By 1920, almost the whole Uganda was under British rule with the exception of Karamoja that was under military rule

### **Why did the British apply it in Uganda?**

#### **What was indirect rule?**

1. This was the British colonial administrative policy
2. It was popularized by Frederick Lugard in his book 'The Dual Mandate' written in 1922
3. Lugard in India with a measure of success first applied it
4. It was meant use of local chiefs (Traditional rulers)

5. The British would pass directive to those rulers who in turn would pass them to their subjects
6. Traditional rulers were permitted to retain some shallow power
7. They collected taxes, presided over local courts
8. It was applied in centralized societies with well- developed institutions like Buganda
9. Was based on the principle of divide and rule
10. Shielded the colonial master and exposed the traditional rulers
11. It perpetuated class distinction i.e. the ruling families became the elite both socially and educationally
12. Made the aristocrats amass wealth
13. It was cheap and chiefs were paid little for their services
14. There was already well established institutions in the area they were applied
15. It would reduce resistance against the British
16. The chiefs would be used as shock absorbers and would insulate the British
17. Need to preserve traditional institutions
18. Had been used with a measure of success in India
19. African chiefs would acquire some leadership skills
20. The british feared to directly move in some areas infested with diseases
21. A sign of appreciation to reward those societies which collaborated because the British left them to run their own affairs
22. To solve the problem of manpower
23. To solve the problem of language barrier
24. There was the Lukiiko on which Buganda modle administrative local council in other area would be modeled
25. The best way to entrenching colonial rule with realization of the subjects
26. Dual benefits i.e. both blacks and whited would benefit
27. It indirectly granted the British more power over the Africans
28. The British believed their traditional leaders secured ready obedience from the subjects

29. Local leaders understood the people better
30. They wanted to have a unique administrative system
31. It was in line with British people and the rest British policy of double trade
32. Africans were likely to be more effective

**Explain the methods used by the British to administer their colonies**

**Describe the British system of administration in Uganda before 1914**

**How was indirect rule applied?**

1. The British came to have interest in Uganda because of explorers and missionaries
2. After acquiring the area, they handed its administration to IBEACo
3. In 1893, Sir Gerald Portal raised the British flag to mark the beginning of the British rule in Uganda
4. In 1894, Uganda was declared a British protectorate
5. Through force and agreements the rest of Uganda was brought under the control of the British
6. The British mainly applied the policy of indirect rule
7. The system entrusted power to the native chiefs and traditional rulers
8. i.e. the conquered chiefs and kings were used to rule the conquered masses
9. It preserved and gradually adopted African traditional socio-political institutions like traditional courts, laws and roles of chiefs
10. The system was mainly applied in areas with centralized kingdoms like Buganda
11. It was introduced and popularized by Captain Frederick
12. At the top was the colonial secretary (whiteman) based in London
13. He was in charge of colonial affairs and answerable to the British parliament
14. Below the colonial secretary were the Governor-Generals, responsible for colonies
15. These were obviously whites and were answerable to the colonial secretary

16. Below the governor were the provincial commissioners heading every province
17. These were answerable to the governors
18. Below them were the district commissioners heading every district
19. These took orders from the provincial commissioners (whites)
20. Provinces were divided into districts under district commissioners
21. The districts were further sub divided into counties each under a county chief
22. These were supposed to be Africans and took orders from the district officials
23. There was the district council based at the district
24. Counties were sub- divided into sub- counties under sub county chiefs
25. These were also Africans and were answerable o the county chiefs
26. Sub- counties were broken into smaller units called parishes under parish chiefs
27. These were answerable o the sub county chiefs
28. The parishes were divided into sub- parishes under sub- parish chiefs
29. These took orders from the parish chiefs
30. Below the sub- parish chiefs were the village headmen heading every village
31. These got orders from sub- parish chiefs and would pass them on to the common man
32. Thus all these chiefs, from the village headman up to the governor, formed a chain of command
33. Indirect rule worked at the local levels, from the district up to the village level. All these positions were reserved for Africans
34. Top positions (central level) were for the British officials
35. Indirect rule was based on an assumption that every area was like Buganda
36. In areas with centralized governments the system created peace and tranquility
37. In the North where there were no organized governments the British created their own chiefs and councils of elders that were willing to listen to them
38. For example, Amet who had no hereditary claims to power was made a chief (Rwoth)
39. In eastern Uganda, semei Kakungulu, a British loyalist was used to administer the area

40. He divided the area into counties and created an administrative structure modeled on the Kiganda way
41. He would get orders from the British representative at the district
42. In Bunyror, the British appointed Baganda agents like Miti to administer the area on their behalf
43. Such agents were replaced by local chiefs in case of hostility and resistance from the local people
44. In Toro, indirect rule was a flop because the colonial government had failed to give the chief's mailo land as promised in the 1900 Toro agreement
45. Some Batoro had also refused to recognize the rule of Daudi Kasagama
46. In the west (Ankole) some Bairu were used by the British to rule the Bahima
47. Local chiefs were charged with the keeping of peace, collection of taxes, mobilizing people for public works, presiding over local courts and maintenance of schools and dispensaries (any two)
48. The whites could only come in as advisors and supervisors or in case of resistance
49. Cases involving whites (British nationals) were to be handled by the colonial government
50. African chiefs were placed on government wages and salaries
51. Humiliating and dehumanizing punishments were meted out to "big headed" chiefs
52. E.g. Rwoth Alier of Pajule was dropped into a pit latrine for opposing British interests
53. Mwanga and Kabalega were exiled for opposing the British
54. The British government in London made laws on which Africans were to be administered
55. These were known as "the Uganda orders in council"
56. There was the central government council based in Entebbe
57. Its duty was to advise the governor. Similar councils were also established at every district
58. The govt established administrative posts, roads and railway lines to ease administration
59. The local councils were financially weak and depended on handouts from the central government
60. After 1930, the powers of the local chiefs were reduced as British officials became many and assumed more powers
61. To cater for the cost of administration indigenous people were encouraged to grow cash crops

## **What problems did the British face in the administration in Uganda?**

1. Wide spread rebellions against British rule e.g. Lamogi in Acholi, nyangire rebellion in Bunyoro
2. There was language barrier due to a multiplicity of languages
3. Lack of manpower, the colonial government had been given only 40 trained white personnel
4. There were inadequate means of transport
5. Poor roads especially to the north and north east
6. Thus making communication between the headquarters and other parts of the protectorate difficult
7. Poor climatic conditions
8. Diseases
9. They lacked funds
10. High costs of administration
11. Introducing a uniform economic activity was also difficult
12. There existed different systems of administration in different parts of Uganda by the time the British arrived
13. Hence creating centralized authority where it did not exist was difficult
14. Kiganda model of administration the British wanted to use throughout failed in some areas
15. Some Baganda agents were not loyal to the British
16. 1900 Buganda agreement marginalized catholics and muslims leading to resentment
17. 1953 boycotts of non African shops
18. Sudanese soldiers attacked Northern Uganda to extend equatorial province
19. The Sudanese mutiny in the north (1897)
20. Failure to understand the fabric of Ugandan society
21. Agitation for political independence
22. The indigenous people did not know how to read and write (illiteracy)
23. The people of Uganda were divided along religious lines

24. The religious wars later caused a lot of destruction
25. Some agents were unpopular e.g. the Buganda agents in Bunyoro

### **What were the effects of indirect rule in Uganda?**

1. Created a class of ambitious Uganda like Kakungulu
2. Encouraged self centered thinking among Ugandans
3. Made Buganda develop secessionist tendencies
4. Enabled the British to effectively exploit Ugandan resources
5. Serious education was neglected
6. Created a class of conservative Africans
7. Saved Uganda from becoming a settler colony
8. Brought religion into the politics of Uganda
9. It dehumanized and demoralized African chiefs
10. It reduced the spread of islam

### **Why did the Germans apply direct rule in Tanganyika?**

1. It was a system of administration where the Germans themselves administered Africans
2. In direct rule traditional chiefs lost their powers which was given to the German agents (Akidas and Jumbes)
3. Because they used force to capture many parts of Tanganyika to maintain them force had to be used
4. It was used because the Germans believed that it was the only system through which they could effectively administer their colony (Tanganyika).
5. Also believed the system would enable them effectively exploit and benefit from african resources

6. The Germans had used force to take over many parts of Tanganyika and therefore soldiers had to be used otherwise Africans could revolt at the slightest opportunity
7. The Germans had suffered early revolts and therefore had to bring in the harsh Akidas and Jumbes to “tame” the Africans
8. The Germans believed it was the only effective system of administration
9. The Germans wanted to promote and impose their superior culture over the Africans
10. The Germans were also a proud people and never wanted to share administration with the Africans
11. In many societies, there were no chiefs and where they existed they were not faithful or powerful enough and therefore the Germans had no one to entrust authority with
12. They might have opted for this system because they had enough manpower to man all departments and thus saw no need to recruit Africans
13. They might have also feared the expenses of training Africans before they could take over administration as this could have also strained their budget
14. The Germans lacked experience in colonial administration
15. Feared to use a system that was being used by their rivals (the British)
16. Tanganyika lacked many centralized that would produce enough chiefs to be used in administration
17. The Germans were being threatened by the British in Tanganyika
18. The Germans also believed in the principle of effective occupation which principle needed direct rule
19. Direct rule was a way of creating employment for the German settlers
20. Bismarck’s policy of “Blood and iron” inspired the Germans to use force in controlling their colonies
21. Germany joined the scramble later hence the need to use direct rule to quicken the process
22. The Germans wanted to build a strong empire in Africa
23. The Germans had the manpower to rule directly
24. They feared expenses of training Africans

## **Describe the colonial system of administration in Tanganyika up to 1914**

### **How did the German administer Tanganyika up 1914?**

#### **What was direct rule?**

1. German administration in Tanganyika started in 1891 taking over from GEICO
2. They used a system of direct rule
3. It involved the Germans in the direct administration of their colony
4. It was started and popularized by Carl Peters
5. At the top was the German governor stationed at Dar-es-salaam
6. At first most governors were soldiers
7. The governor had wide powers and authority
8. The governor was directly responsible to the colonial minister
9. In 1904 the governors council was set up to advise the governor
10. The council had 3 government servants
11. The Germans divided Tanganyika into districts and by 1914 there were 22 districts
12. The rebellious districts of Mahinge and Iringa were put under military control
13. Each district was under a district officer called Bezirksamtman
14. With police force and a small army to maintain law and order
15. The district officers were charged with the collection of taxes, appointed and dismissed African junior chiefs
16. The district heads also acted as judges
17. Presiding over cases and administering punishments
18. They also acted as the highest court of appeal
19. Districts were divided into counties further divided into sub- counties
20. Sub counties were divided into villages of 20,000 – 30,000 people

21. The two districts of Burundi and Rwanda were under German residents
22. Below the district heads were Akidas
23. Below the Akidas were Jumbes who were in charge of villages
24. Most of Akidas were Arabs or Swahilis
25. These supervised government projects like the cotton scheme
26. Many chiefs were stripped of their powers
27. Others were created in areas where they were non existent
28. It was only the Unyanyembe where traditional rulers were left with traditional roles
29. German administration was marred by mal- administration
30. They were only interested in making Tanganyika produce profits for administration
31. It encouraged cash crop growing
32. The settlers also influenced the government policies
33. Through their cruel way, Jumbes and Akidas made the German rule unpopular
34. The Germans resident was posted to each area as a supervisor and advisor
35. The German regarded Africans as weak dishonest and backward
36. They applied forced labour on road construction and cotton growing
37. Africans were paid less for their labour
38. This resulted into rebellions like Maji- maji, Abushiri, Hehe etc
39. The Germans put up a brutal, harsh and creul systemof administration
40. The Germans were inexperienced in colonial administration because they had just started getting colonies
41. They were arrogant and isolated themselves from the masses
42. The Germans, Akidas and Swahili disrespected Africans customs and chiefs
43. German rule ended in 1919

**What were the results of this system?**

## **What were the effects of direct rule on the people of Tanganyika?**

1. Wide spread rebellions e.g. Maji- maji, abushiri, Hehe etc
2. Led to the rise of nationalism as people started revolting against German rule
3. Many chiefs were stripped of their powers and given to the Akidas and Jumbes
4. Their rule was so harsh and cruel hence hated by Africans
5. Africans wer subjected to forced labour on plantations and public works
6. There was heavy taxation
7. A hut tax of 3 rupees was imposed
8. Forced cash crop growing
9. Africans were subjected to forced labour
10. Wide spread discontent and resentment especially against the Akidas
11. People were brutalized and humiliated
12. African cultures and customs were lost
13. Tribal institutions were destroyed
14. Loss of lives
15. Destruction of property
16. Africans lost their independence
17. It led to break down of tribes
18. German rule divided Africans into collaborators and resistors
19. Wide spread of conflicts and wars
20. Famine broke out due to forced cash crop growing and the scorched earth policy
21. Africans were edged out of trade
22. Africans lost a lot of their land to the German settlers
23. African traders like the Nyamwezi were edged out of trade
24. Africans lived in fear and panic

25. After 1904 the German changed their system from direct to indirect
26. Many powerful local chiefs were appointed as Akidas
27. Africans interests became paramount and settlers became secondary
28. Forced labour reduced
29. The Akidas were sacked
30. Roads and railway lines were developed to ease transportation
31. Germans reformed the administration after the Maji-maji rebellion
32. Germans adopted a dialogue as opposed to force
33. Western civilization was spread through building schools and churches
34. Led to the spread of Christianity except at the coast
35. German rule undermined African cultures
36. E.g. they entered mosques with dogs, burnt shrines etc

**What reforms were introduced in Tanganyika between 1919 and 1939?**

**What changes were introduced by the British in Tanganyika after the Germans?**

1. The British took over Tanganyika in 1919 as a mandated territory
2. They established a new administration and made the following changes
3. Sir Horace Byatt was appointed as the first governor
4. He retained the Akidas and generally the whole German administration as he found it
5. The major challenge facing the British at the time was to set the economy back on its feet after the war disruptions
6. He was later accused of failure to put Tanganyika to a serious economic recovery track
7. Also failed to close up the gap the Germans had created between the rulers and the ruled
8. He was therefore replaced with a new governor- Donald Cameron 1925- 1931
9. Straight away Cameron instituted indirect rule

10. He closed the gap between the government and the people
11. He established the Native Authority ordinance of 1926
12. This empowered Africans to collect taxes, administer justice and carry out some executive tasks
13. 1926, he established the Tanganyika Legco of 13 officials 87 official members
14. Settlers were also represented on the Legco to share in the work of govt.
15. Africans were limited to local council and this later provoked the young mission educated against colonial rule
16. In order to win back their support, he gave them land that previously belonged to the settlers
17. The British settlers found it very hard to get labour and when they obtained it, it was very expensive
18. The government fixed wages to safeguard Africans
19. Many settlers went to Kenya hence reducing the settlers' problem in Tanganyika
20. In the land ordinance of 1923, Europeans were not to buy land for large estates they were only to lease for 1 year
21. Land allocation and the soldier's resettlement scheme were put up
22. Many Africans were encouraged to grow cash crops on their small shambas e.g. coffee and cotton
23. Taxation was introduced in 1923 to enable the British meet their cost of administration
24. There was improved government provision of social services
25. Transport was developed e.g roads were constructed and old ones extended to help communication with Kenya
26. The mining industry was developed at Geita, by 1922 gold exports rivaled sisal
27. In 1925 they set up a department of education to supplement missionary efforts. This was to direct and finance education
28. Education was encouraged and schools were built to cool Africans
29. The British put slavery and slave trade to an end in 1922
30. Political parties were later formed e.g. (Tanganyika African association) in 1919
31. A new system emerged whereby Europeans controlled central administration
32. This was seen later by Africans as a means to prevent political development of africans

## TOPIC 10

### RESPONSE TO COLONIAL RULE

#### What were the causes of the Arab revolt between 1888- 1890?

1. This is also called the Coastal rebellion/ Abushiri uprising
2. It was the first resistance against the Germans in Tanganyika
3. It occurred at the coast Tanganyika between 1888 and 1890
4. Led by Abushiri bin Salim and later joined by Bwana Heri
5. Arabs, Swahilis and Africans were all involved
6. It was against German imperialism
7. The need for independence by the coastal people
8. Resentment of 1888 agreement
9. The sultan of Zanzibar had sold African coastland to the Germans which later provoked the rebellion
10. The Africans were suspicious of increased German settlement at the coast
11. Some African chiefs had lost their traditional authority to the Germans
12. The need to protect their economic power
13. Put heavy tariffs on traders and local people e.g. hut tax, poll tax, inheritance tax etc
14. Forced them out of their middleman's position
15. On top of being high these taxes were brutally collected
16. The abolition of slave trade by the Germans
17. Exploitation of minerals and other resources
18. They were protesting the loss of their property
19. The German East African company had started confiscating Arab houses

20. Tired of restrictions on ownership of land and property
21. Exploitation of minerals and other resources
22. The Germans did not respect the cultures and traditions of the coastal people
23. They did not respect the Muslim time of prayer, fasting
24. Sacrilegious entry of mosques with their dogs
25. They also drunk and slept with people's wives, which annoyed the Muslims
26. The German attempts to steal people's land by imposition of the new land regulation
27. The new land regulation in 1888 that required people to have proof of land ownership
28. The local rulres were being humiliated and harassed by the Germans, public flogging
29. The Germans dismissed their relatives – the Akidas, Liwalis and Jumbes
30. Forced cash crop growing under severe conditions also angered the coastal people
31. They applied forced labour to the Africans who worked on their farms
32. The harsh methods of administration/ direct rule used by the Germans was provocative
33. The Germans had taken over the collecting of mainland import duties

**Describe the course/ organization of the Abushiri resistance of 1888**

1. It was the earliest resistance against the German rule in Tanganyika
2. It took place on the Tanzanian coast line between 1888 – 1890
3. It is also called the coastal rebellion/ Arab revolt
4. It was led by Abushiri bin Salim Al Harthi- a prominent trader of Afro- Arab origin
5. His resistance started on 8<sup>th</sup> August 1888 when the German arrived and established themselves in his area
6. His people refused the hoisting of the German flag and rioted against them
7. The rebellion then abruptly and spontaneously spread to other areas like Kilwa, Bagamoyo, Tanga Kilira and Mukindini

8. Some bantu tribes like the Bonda, Zigua joined Abushiri
9. The Germans were caught unaware and therefore suffered heavy losses
10. Company officials were beaten and driven out of all the coastal lowns
11. By October 1888 the GEICo officials were besieged in Bagamoyo and Dar es Salaam
12. At this Von Wissman was dispatched from German to suppress the resistance
13. He was assisted by Zulus, Somalis, and Nubians and Turkish troops hence the resistance started to crumble
14. He first captured Pangani and then moved on northwards to Dar es Salaam
15. Following this success many Arabs who had supported Abushiri opted to make peace with the Germans and this weakened the rebellion further
16. Smelling defeat Abushiri retreated into the interior and hired 500 Maviti fighters
17. But these did not save the situation because they were only interested in looting
18. On the 15<sup>th</sup> Dec 1889, Abushiri was betrayed by a Jumbe Magaya of Usagara who reported them to the Germans
19. He was then captured and hanged at Bagamoyo
20. He had used religion (Islam) to rally support and get a following
21. At first he used conventional war fare but sensing the possibility of defeat he embarked on guerilla (hit and run) tactics
22. His weaponry consisted of local (crude) arms like old- fashioned guns, bowa and arrows, spears and clubs.
23. The Germans had superior weapons like machine guns and bombs
24. In April 1890 Bwana Heri desperately surrendered to the Germans
25. By January 1891, the resistance was crushed and German government replaced the company as the new rulers of East Africa

**Why did this revolt fail?**

**What problems did Abushiri face in his resistance against the Germans?**

**Why did the coastal Arabs lose this conflict?**

1. Lack of military training (Abushiri had never been a military man)
2. German superior weapons compared to the Africans
3. Lack of a united command- many towns fought independently
4. Or lack of effective coordination among the fighting groups
5. Lack of unity i.e. Abushiri was betrayed by a Jumbe Magaya of Usagara
6. Lack of the spirit of nationalism
7. Abushiri's army was not big enough compared to the large force of the Germans
8. The German army was well trained and well equipped compared to the Africans
9. This forced him to retreat into the interior and hire mercenaries
10. But the recruited mercenaries (Maviti) didn't know why they were fighting
11. Yet the Germans used ruthless Zulu, Somalis, Nubians and Turkish troops
12. In the interior, he was cut-off from trade and the supply of guns
13. He also had no following in the interior
14. Betrayal by some Africans who supported the Germans e.g. Zigua under Mkubwa
15. Some tribes easily gave in to the Germans which weakened the resistance
16. The rebellion was poorly organized
17. Poor fighting tactics among the coastal people i.e. direct confrontation, open warfare
18. The rebellion lacked a national outlook- taken to be an Arab revolt
19. Divisions emerged as the coastal people i.e. they had different aims of fighting
20. E.g. the Swahili and other leaders wanted to regain their independence (they didn't want either German or the sultan of Zanzibar's domination)
21. The Arabs mainly traders aimed at protecting their economic interests
22. And were not ready to embark on a prolonged war which would ruin their trade
23. Famine due to the scorched earth policy led most people to surrender
24. Lack of strong economy to sustain a protracted war/ poverty

25. Topography didn't favour the coastal people i.e. lack of defensive barriers
26. German determination to crush the rebellion
27. Use of cruel methods to suppress the revolt which instilled fear among the rebels
28. Wissman quickly organized war, which caught Abushiri unprepared
29. Cruelty of the coastal leaders against those who refused to participate in the war
30. The arrest, capture and killing of Abushiri demoralized his fighters
31. Lack of leadership especially after the death of Abushiri
32. The surrender of Bwana Heri

### **What were the effects of the Abushiri rebellion?**

1. Abushiri was defeated
2. Loss of lives on both sides
3. Destruction of property e.g. buildings were demolished
4. There was the deliberate spread of cattle diseases like rinderpest
5. Famine due to the scorched- earth policy and spread of diseases
6. Peace returned to the coastal towns after a long time of political upheaval
7. Abushiri's defeat opened up East Africa for colonization
8. It taught tribes in northern Tanganyika not to bother resisting the Germans
9. Sultan of Zanzibar recognized German ownership over the coastal towns
10. Coastal towns and the interior tribes lost their independence
11. Made the Germans realize the weaknesses of company rule
12. The Germans were forced to change their government bringing in traditional rulers to cool tempers
13. This was followed with the training of personnel to help in the administration of the area

**What led to the conflicts between Mkwawa and the Germans between 1890 – 1898**

**Explain the causes of the Hehe resistances between 1890 -1898**

**Why did chief Mkwawa rise against the Germans in Tanganyika between 1890 -1898?**

1. Chief Mkwawa was a leader of the Hehe who occupy southern Tanzania
2. He rose up against the German imperialism in his territory
3. He had built a powerful military state so he refused to submit to the German rule
4. The Germans had stopped Mkwawa's aggressive expansionist raid against his neighbors
5. Mkwawa couldn't leave the long distance trade route from Tabora to Bagamoyo which Germans wanted to take control of
6. Germans despised Mkwawa and called him backward uncivilized
7. The Germans refused to pay taxes to Mkwawa and he reacted by closing all trade routes
8. The Germans massacre of Mkwawa's diplomatic envoys (messengers)
9. The Germans subjected the Hehe to forced labor on public works
10. The Germans despised African culture by calling it sanatic and barbaric
11. The expulsion of Akidas and Jumbes mercenaries
12. Mkwawa's desire to maintain the Hehe independence
13. Mkwawa's opposition to the introduction of the German tax called the Hongo
14. His resistance was also a protest against the German grabbing of Hehe lands
15. Mkwawa's character- he was a big headed, arrogant and unpredictable ruler
16. His expected support from chief Chabruma of the Ngoni and chief Siki of Tabora

**Chief Mkwawa career/ course of the Hehe resistance between 1890 -1898**

1. He was a prominent Hehe chief who resisted German colonialism
2. Waged persistent raids against his neighbours and levied duty on traders

3. All these angered the Germans
4. He was opposed to contemptuous treatment of his people by the Germans
5. In 1890 Mkwawa closed the trade routes between Tabora and Bagamoyo
6. Then he sought alliance with Ngoni chief Chabruma as well as Isike of the Nyamwezi with the intention of fighting against the German administration
7. In June 1891, Mkwawa ambushed a German force of 1000 men near Iringa
8. Killing 300 of them and others escaped in shock and disbelief.
9. In August 1891, the Germans sent military weapons and soldiers to the Hehe so as to make peace with Mkwawa
10. In return Mkwawa sent representatives to offer presents and make peace with the Germans
11. But the Germans thought Mkwawa's representatives had come to attack them so they killed all of them.
12. In October 1892, Mkwawa attacked a large commercial caravan at Mukindala to block German advance into their territory
13. Also attacked Kilosa garrison, killing all its occupants
14. To strengthen his position, Mkwawa built a fort/ capital at kalenga
15. He hoped to gather his supporters in this fort and prepare them for war
16. In 1894, an expedition led by Governor Vonschele and captain John Von Prince attacked Kalenga
17. But Mkwawa escaped
18. The Germans used the scorched earth policy
19. Mkwawa attempted to ambush the Germans at Imange on their return to the coast but failed
20. Kalenga was occupied by the Germans who later destroyed it and established a German settlement there
21. Between 1894 and 1896 the Hehe were engaged in guerilla war against the Germans
22. In 1896 the Germans attacked the Hehe again
23. In 1898 Mkwawa was betrayed by some of his chiefs to the Germans
24. To avoid being captured, Mkwawa committed suicide
25. When the Germans found his dead body, they cut off his head and sent it to a German museum

26. After his death, many Hehe warriors surrendered to the Germans and the Germans were able to establish their control without any interference
27. Only returned to his people in 1954 after they over complained

**What problems did he face in his resistance?**

**Why was this rebellion unsuccessful?**

1. Lack of proper preparations on the side of Mkwawa
2. Yet the German army was well trained and well equipped/ German military superiority
3. Lack of sufficient arms i.e. the Hehe did not have enough weapons
4. The few weapons he had were inferior compared to the Germans
5. Lack of a standing army
6. Lack of united command
7. Lack of unity among the Hehe/ disunity among the Hehe
8. Lack of effective mobilization and coordination among the Hehe
9. Lack of strong sense nationalism
10. Lack of support from his neighbors
11. German determination to crush the rebellion at all cost
12. The storming of his capital at Kalenga
13. Use of cruel methods to suppress the revolt which instilled fear among the Hehe e.g. scorched earth policy/ German brutality
14. The Germans used intimidation e.g. cut off Mkwawa's head which made the hehe fear the Germans and thus surrendered
15. Difficult period of the scramble and partition of Africa
16. Impact of the Berlin conference of 1884 -85, i.e. called for European cooperation in the event of the scramble
17. The Germans hired ruthless mercenaries like the Zulu, Somali and Nubian

18. Long periods of drought and diseases like typhoid and cholera weakened the Hehe soldiers
19. Mkwawa's poor health
20. Famine due to the scorched earth policy led most people to surrender
21. Lack of strong economy to sustain war fare/ the Hehe were poor
22. Suffered from inferiority complex
23. Poor fighting methods among the Hehe i.e. pitched battle fields, direct confrontation and open warfare
24. Poor planning i.e. he concentrated on protecting his people
25. Divisions emerged among the Hehe/ people had different aims of fighting
26. Mkwawa's unstable mind
27. The rebellion took long, leaving many of his warriors dead
28. The death of Mkwawa was the final blow to the rebellion
29. Loss of morale among the fighting forces especially after death of Mkwawa
30. Lack of leadership after Mkwawa's death
31. Existence of traitors like the chiefs who betrayed Mkwawa to the Germans

**What were the effects of the Hehe resistance?**

1. Many Africans lost their lives
2. Depopulation in southern Tanganyika
3. The Hehe Africans were defeated by the Germans
4. The Hehe lost their independence
5. Crops were destroyed leading to famine
6. Destruction of property
7. Wide spread misery and suffering
8. Displacement of people

9. There was economic decline in southern Tanganyika
10. Trade was disrupted especially on the central trade route
11. There was destruction of property
12. The Hehe learnt a lesson, not bother fighting the Germans
13. The Germans learnt that Africans resistance should not be taken for granted
14. After shooting himself, his head was cut off and taken to a German museum where it stayed until 1954
15. Punishing then further, the Germans imposed a heavy fine on them
16. With the defeat of Mkwawa the Germans disbanded his council of advisers

#### **What were the causes of the 1905- 1907 Maji- Maji rebellion?**

1. It was an African resistance against German colonial rule in southern Tanganyika
2. It involved tribes like the Zaramo, Wangido, Pogoro, Bena, matumbi, Mbuga etc
3. The phrase maji- Maji refers to the magic water believed to give courage and protection against German bullets
4. The magic water was provided by Bokero Kinjikitile of Ngarambe
5. Replacement of traditional rulers by the harsh Akidas and Jumbes
6. No respect for local chiefs- they be flogged in public
7. Germans arrogance e.g. left their dogs to enter mosques
8. Introduction of heavy taxation
9. Cruel methods of tax collection
10. The unsuccessful cotton scheme introduction by the German
11. Growers of cotton received very little pay i.e. 35 cents a year
12. Forced labour on communal farms

13. Need to regain lost independence
14. Lack of respect for local customs e.g. mercenaries raped Wangido women
15. Introduction of Christianity
16. Harsh treatment of Africans working on plantations of the settlers
17. Loss of land/ land alienation
18. Generally the Germans were harsh and ruthless to the people
19. The Ngoni massacres of 1897

**Describe the course of the 1905 – 1907 Maji- maji rebellion?**

**How was the 1905- 1907 Maji- Maji rebellion organized?**

1. Maji- maji refers to magic water
2. It was an African rebellion against German rule in southern Tanzania
3. It involved several tribes e.g. Nyindo, mboga, Ngoni, Zarama, Pogoro, Makumbi etc
4. It started in the area of Matumbi hills in 1905 when the Matumbi drove out the Akidas and Jumbes
5. Spread to cotton producing areas around River rufigi, Urunguru, Mahembe to Kilombero valleys
6. The Ngindo, Mpuga, pogoro and the Ngoni were brought together by traditional religion i.e. Kalero cult
7. Kinjikitile Ngwale encouraged the unity of people by getting water from river Rufigi and mixed it with sorghum
8. It was to protect them from German bullets
9. He also used a secret communication campaign called 'Jujila'
10. German plantation, missions, administration bomas and Swahili ships were attacked
11. Used surprised attacks when invaded German headquarters of Mahenge, Kilose, Iringa, Songea
12. On 2<sup>nd</sup> August 1905 the coastal town of Samanga was burnt and many government officials killed
13. The same month, Africans attempted to capture German machine guns at Mahenge

14. The Germans got reinforcement from the Zulu, Sudanese and Swahili
15. German reinforcement was under Von Wissman
16. Africans resorted to guerilla warfare after the defeat of the Ngoni
17. Africans were armed with water, spears and stones
18. However, the magic water didn't work and many were killed and leaders were executed
19. Germans used the earth scorched policy
20. E.g. they destroyed the strength of the Africans by burning their houses, farmland
21. Africans were defeated by the Germans in 1907

**What were the effects of this rebellion on the people of Tanganyika?**

1. Many Africans lost their lives about 75000 people died
2. Depopulation in southern Tanganyika
3. Africans were defeated by the Germans
4. Crops were destroyed leading to famine (Fuga- fuga)
5. Destruction of property
6. Wide spread misery and suffering
7. Displacement of people
8. There was economic decline in southern Tanganyika
9. Africans confidence in traditional religion and medicine (magic water)
10. They also had confidence and respect for their traditional leaders
11. Many thus joined foreign- religions i.e. Christianity and Islam
12. African collaborators were rewarded by the Germans
13. It inspired future nationalists like Julius Nyerere
14. Hatred between those who participated and those who didn't
15. Africans stooped violence and tried other means to regain their independence

16. The Germans changed their methods of administration
17. They stopped taking Africans for granted
18. Africans were encouraged to grow cash crops on their own
19. Corporal punishment was stopped
20. The harsh *Akidas* and *Jumbes* were sacked
21. White settlers' demands for forced labour were controlled
22. Education was introduced/ improved
23. White settlers who mistreated Africans could also be punished
24. Tanganyika was divided into districts and rebellious areas were put under military leaders
25. Marked the establishment of German rule in Tanganyika

### **Why did the Africans lose the Maji- maji rebellion?**

### **Why did the Maji- Maji rebellion resistance fail?**

1. Kinjikitile's false propaganda- the 'magic water' did not provide immunity against German bullets
2. Africans were armed with traditional weapons like spears, arrows and stones
3. The Germans used modern weapons like submachine guns
4. Poor organization – Africans did not make enough preparation before the war
5. There was no military training carried out to prepare the fighters for war
6. There was lack of unity among the various tribes in the fighting
7. The Hehe, Chagga and Nyamwezi did not join the rebellion hence weakening the fighters
8. Still on unity, Africans fought in groups with no unified command (they had more than one leader)
9. The scorched earth policy employed by the Germans left the food stores and gardens destroyed
10. Africans suffered from famine due to the scorched earth policy
11. This forced the Africans to surrender to the Germans in 1907
12. The Maji- maji fighters lacked persistence – some tribes pulled out leaving fellow fighters to suffer

13. The Germans received help from Germany in form of arms and troops
14. The Germans got re-inforcement from the Zulus, Sudanese and Somalis
15. The slave traders had also taken away the energetic and left only the weak ones
16. Africans had poor economies that could not sustain a prolonged war against a rich country like Germany
17. The Germans were also determined to takeover Tanganyika
18. The death of their leaders made the rebellion lose continuity e.g. Kinjikitile, Ngwale, Mpanda and Mputa Gana
19. Many Africans took cover in the bushes which made them easy prey to the Germans
20. The Africans resorted to the guerilla warfare giving up direct warfare
21. The Africans lacked communication since Kinjikitile was far away in Ngarambe

### **Why did the Nandi rise against the British in 1895?**

1. The Nandi are a Nilotics people who occupy the highland escarpment west of the basin Gishu plateau in Kenya
2. They resisted British attempts to establish colonial rule
3. Disliked British interference and wanted to be independent
4. Never wanted the British to cross their land
5. Due to their experience in raiding expeditions over neighboring tribes, believed in their superiority military
6. Believed in their cultural superiority
7. British arrival with claim of superiority violated Nandi integrity hence wanted to chase away the British
8. Europeans were viewed as female devils because of the cloth and colour thus to be expelled instantly
9. Nandi resisted the female devils to protect their country
10. The prophecy of the religious leader Orkoiyot Kimnyole
11. Prophesized the coming of the iron snake which turned out to be the railway

12. Resisted being thrown out of their land through which the railway had to pass
13. British settlers desire to occupy the same land through a forced peace treaty of Kipture
14. Because they were being forced into a reserve area out of their land
15. The British killing of the Nandi Orkoiyot in a shameful incident forced the Nandi to pick up arms in 1895
16. The British were interfering in ivory and slave trade
17. The killing of Peter West in 1895 who was a British envoy
18. Because their neighbors the Masaai and Baluyia had collaborated
19. Inspired by other rebellions like the Hehe and Abushiri of 1880s

### **Why were they able to resist the British for a long time?**

1. Environmental advantage of a mountainous country with steep heavily wooded valleys which was ideal for guerilla warfare
2. It was unsuitable for the maximum gun used by the British
3. The wet and cold climate caused respiratory infections among the British forces
4. The mobility of British troops was reduced by the large number of porters who had to carry food
5. Nandi had a highly disciplined and efficient army, which had a lot of experience in fighting against the Masaai and other neighbors
6. With this the Nandi put a strong resistance against the Sudanese soldiers who were employed by British to fight them
7. Had good military tactics that involved ambushes and night fights
8. The Nandi didn't have defensive strong points that could have been good targets for the superior British guns
9. Nandi fought in separate companies according to their clans and residence
10. This helped them because in case one company was destroyed, the struggle would continue for the other companies hence prolonged war

11. There was cooperation between the districts in the war through the Orkoyoit a religious leader who delegated his prophecy through his district agents Maotik coordinated war efforts
12. Made their own weapons e.g. spears
13. Nandi acquired guns through trade from the Arabs
14. Nandi never suffered from famine and diseases unlike other societies
15. The British underestimated the strength of the Nandi forces
16. Nandi were determined to fight and defend their country
17. The Nandi pride also gave them determination to fight the British for long
18. Being a warrior society, the Nandi had a lot of experience in fighting
19. The British lacked geographical knowledge/ they were at times misguided
20. The cutting of telecommunication lines and raids hindered the transportation of reinforcement of British troops

### **The course of the Nandi wars of resistance**

1. As the Masaai power weakened at the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, Nandi power was growing
2. Having frightened most of his neighbors, the Nandi were unwilling to accept British authority
3. They even never wanted them to cross their land
4. So in 1885, they killed a British trader West
5. A British force failed to defeat them
6. And for 11 years they resisted the British rule
7. They often raided railway depots and stole equipments before disappearing to the hills
8. They were not subdued till 1905
9. The British commander colonel Meinertzhagen visited the Nandi leader (Orkoiyot) Koitale Arap Samoi
10. It was believed that Meinertzhagen had done so in self defense but the Nandi thought it was treachery and cold blooded murder

11. As Orkoiyot came out to meet his visitor, he was shot together with some of his men
12. Nandi resistance was broken
13. They were removed from an area away from the railway line and some of their land given to European settlers

### **Why the Nandi were finally defeated**

14. The superiority of the British forces
15. Poor organization
16. The long periods of drought, famine and diseases
17. Lacked support from their neighbors like the Luyia, Masaai and Luo
18. The British had with time realized the need to organize stronger expeditions
19. War fatigue
20. British forces were reinforced by Swahili, Masaai, Ganda, Indian etc
21. The murder of their leader Orkoiyot Koitale greatly demoralized them
22. British determination
23. The wide spread use of violence also left the Nandi severely weakened
24. There was lack of constant supply of arms and ammunitions on the side of the Nandi
25. The Nandi also lacked proper military tactics
26. The poor economy of the Nandi could not sustain a prolonged war of resistance
27. The belief in superstition

### **Effects of the Nandi resistance**

1. The Nandi were defeated
2. Lost their independence

3. Many people were killed
4. Depopulation of the Nandi lands
5. Massive destruction of property
6. Outbreak of famine
7. Loss of land to the white settlers and the railway line
8. The Nandi were pushed into reserves
9. Some were forced to migrate to towns and urban centers
10. Wide spread poverty and misery
11. The British were able to construct the railway line
12. The defeat of the Nandi taught their neighbors a lesson
13. They realized the superiority of the white man's gun in the battlefield
14. Forts were built throughout the Nandi areas like in Kipture, Kaptume etc
15. Nandi superiority and arrogance in the region was crushed
16. Fulfilled the prophecy of their leader- that a foreigner would rule them
17. The Nandi lost their leader Orkoiyot Koitale Arap Samoei who was murdered
18. Many people converted to Christianity
19. The Nandi accepted European rule after their defeat
20. The Nandi taught the British that Africans could resist
21. With the defeat of the Nandi, more Europeans poured into Kenya

**How did the following leaders react to the establishment of colonial rule in their area?**

**Semei Kakungulu**

1. Semei Lwakilenzi Kakungulu was born in Kooki around 1870
2. Grew up in the Kabaka's court in Buganda as a page

3. Demonstrated that he was a military genius / a good soldier
4. After conflicting with Apollo kaggwa he was rewarded with an area in Bugerere(Kyaggwe) where he confined himself for some time
5. He took part in the religious wars
6. He helped the British against the Banyoro (1893- 94)
7. Had wanted to bring the area along the Nile i.e. lango, Teso etc under the British rule
8. Encouraged by Col. Tarman, he was requested to create an empire in eastern Uganda supposedly for himself
9. In 1895, he led a delegation of Kuman and Iteso elders to Buganda seeking Kabaka's protection
10. In 1897 he collaborated with the British to quell to Sudanese mutiny
11. This made him to be awarded with a metal
12. In 1901, established a fort at Buruli for his operations against the Kumam and Iteso, Bugisu and Bukedi
13. Used both diplomacy and military power/ gun to weaken and disorganize the societies he came across
14. Succeeded due to loyalty of his followers i.e. Baganda agents and collaborators
15. In 1899, he helped in the arrest of Kabalega and Mwanga at Kangai in Lango
16. The British later accused him of causing disorder in Eastern Uganda and was later sent to Bukedi
17. From there he was taken to Busoga where he became the president of the Busoga Lukiiko
18. In 1913 he was removed from office and returned to Bukedi as a Saza chief
19. He rebelled against the British and introduced a new religion of Abamalaki
20. But he had already established the Kiganda model of administration
21. This helped in the development of indirect rule and native administration
22. i.e. Saza, Gombolola, Muluka etc
23. Helped to establish roads line with mivule trees in Eastern Uganda
24. These led to economic development in eastern Uganda e.g. cotton growing
25. Helped to attract Indians and Arabs to open trading activities in eastern Uganda
26. He was dismissed around 1928 and died in 1929

### **Why did Kakungulu collaborate with the British?**

1. Kakungulu grew up as a page in the Kabaka's court
2. He was from Kalangala (Kooki)
3. His failure to get a post in the Buganda government
4. Had been entangled with power tussle with Apollo Kagwa in Kabaka's palace
5. Had played a key role in religious wars and became a General
6. The growing influence of the missionaries at the Kabaka's court forced him to collaborate
7. From then (1892), he became an open collaborator of the British to gain fame
8. He nursed the idea of becoming a Kabaka by establishing his headquarters at Bugerere with the aid of the British troops especially Nubians
9. He expanded his kingdom/ empire into Lango, Teso, Busoga, Bukedi with British aids to accomplish his hidden motive
10. His first posting gave him the first taste of power and created an impetus in him to conquer and rule other areas
11. He was an opportunist who expected material rewards from the British
12. Because of his lowly origins, he wanted to earn himself fame and recognition
13. His insatiable ambition for power and leadership
14. He believed that the best way of fighting Buganda's enemies was to ally with the British
15. The willingness of the British to tap the administrative potential in him
16. It was part of the Indirect rule system to look for shrewd and brave Africans
17. Wanted to use his British connections to extend Buganda's influence to the neighboring areas
18. In 1929, he died a disappointed old man and was buried in Mbale

### **What were the results of his collaboration?**

1. He helped the British in the extension of their rule to Eastern Uganda
2. He convinced fellow baganda to accept British rule
3. He built administrative posts in Eastern Uganda e.g. Mbale, Budaka etc
4. He built roads e.g. Mbale- Tirinnyi, Bubulo- Nabumali, Iganga- Budaka roads
5. He united the Basoga and assumed the presidency of the Basoga Lukiiko
6. He also trained many local rulers in the same area
7. He set up medical centres wherever like Budaka dispensary in Budaka
8. He planted many mivule trees and mangoes in Eastern Uganda
9. He introduced the Kiganda model of administration in Eastern Uganda
10. He divided the areas into counties and appointed baganda agents and advisers
11. He encouraged the growing of cash crops, cotton and coffee
12. He was rewarded with land in Mbale for his support to the British
13. Encouraged the extension of the railwasy line to Eastern Uganda
14. Helped the British in the capture of Mwanga and Kabalega in Lango in 1899

### **Laibon Lenana/ Masaai**

1. Following the death of Laibon Mbatian in 1890, Sendayo and Lenana fought for the vacant post of Laibonship
2. Lenana settled his followers between Ngong and Naivasha
3. He managed to maintain his position as the Laibon despite the frequent raids from Sendayo on his territory and other problems
4. 1890 rinder pest epidemic killed many cattle. Lenana made arrangements to transfer some Masaai women to kikuyu villages
5. 1894, Lenana went to the British administration at Fort Smith to press for help
6. This led to a good relationship between the Masaai and the British

7. Obtained assistance from a local British officer, Francis Hill who employed the Masaai warriors against other tribes
8. E.g. a combined force raided Kikuyu and captured many cattle
9. Uganda railway across the Masaai land was built without any hinderance
10. The Masaai supported the British campaign against the Nandi
11. He increased his prestige and successfully asserted to Laibonship
12. Was given the tittle of paramount chief of the Masaai
13. He signed the first Masaai agreement in 1904 by which the Masaai were put in two reserves
14. i.e. one in the south of Ngong hills and the other in Laikipia plateau
15. March 1911, lenana died but had laid the foundation for the movement of the Masaai to an enlarged southern reserve

### **Apollo Kaggwa**

1. Kaggwa's career typifies African cooperation with colonial rule
2. Born in 1869 into the grasshopper clan
3. Served in the courts of Muteesa I and Mwanga II
4. Converted to Protestantism
5. Led the campaign Vs Mwanga and Kabalega
6. 1898, played a role of suppressing and defeating the Sudanese mutineers
7. Capture of Mwanga and Kabalega in 1899
8. Was made senior regent in Chwa II's reign (Katikiro Pilato)
9. Played key role in the 1900 Buganda agreement
10. Continued to work closely with the colonial administration especially governor Bell
11. Encouraged schools/ education etc
12. And adopted new methods of agriculture and crops

13. Assisted in the evacuation of people from the shores because of sleeping sickness
14. Stood in the defense of the Ganda traditional institution
15. As represented in the Lukiiko reforms (1914-16)
16. Increasingly fell with the colonial administration
17. Also faced opposition from the Bakabakas and the new generation of the chiefs
18. And kabaka Chwa II had come of age
19. The grating of the beer licence in the kibuga also climaxed the tension between Kaggwa and the commissioner for Buganda in 1925
20. Had out lived his usefulness to the British protectorate government and to his own people
21. Angry and frastuated Kaggwa resigned in 1926
22. Died in 1927

### **Omukama Kasagama**

1. He was the Omukama (king) of Toro
2. He was restored on the throne by the British
3. Lived under constant threats of Kabalega
4. E.g. driven out of power in 1893
5. Following Kabalega's defeat in 1894, Toro gained part of Bunyoro's land through the help of the British
6. Kasagama was a strong ally of the British
7. As the Omukama, he didn't win the recognition of all the Batoro
8. Their were persistent complaints about his state of affair
9. 1904, government prompted by H.E. Maddox a CMS missionary took action
10. Consequently, Kasagama was recognized as the Omukama of Toro
11. Had his powers increased

12. Including right to nominate his successor
13. Toro treated on the same footing with other kingdoms in Uganda
14. But her relation with the colonial government was nto smooth
15. The majority of the Batooro accused the government of neglecting their area in development
16. They accused the government of sending some of their territories to Congo in 1941
17. Signed the Toro agreement of 1900 with the British
18. And that many of their chiefs had not received the mailo land promised to them in 1900
19. While kasagama collaborated with the British, their was mistrust and hostility between the colonial rulers and the Africans they ruled
20. He died in 1929

### **Nuwa Mbaguta**

1. He was born in 1867
2. As a young boy, he lost his parents and was left in the hands of relatives
3. Later he ran away from his relatives to go and live at Omugabe Ntare IV's court
4. As he grew up, he was taken to work as a page at the king's court at Mularagaira but he didn't enjoy his stay there
5. Soon he ran back to Ntare's palace
6. He had the courage to enter the Omugabe's bedroom
7. Mbaguta became a fearless wrestler, which earned him the nickname Kitinwa- the feared one
8. Soon his courage and shrewdness earned him the admiration of the Omugabe
9. He became one of his favourite pages and was made to join his trusted army unit
10. When the British came, he became an ardent crusader of their propaganda
11. In 1894, he signed a treaty with the British on behalf of Ntare IV
12. He led the campaign to construct the road that Sir Harry Johnston used to move from Ankole to Toro

13. In 1900, he was made the Enganzi- Prime minister of Ankole by the British
14. In 1901, he signed another treaty with the British
15. Through this agreement, the British pledged to support Ankole against Bunyoro
16. Ankole was also allowed to maintain self- government and rewarded with additional territories like Mpororo, Igara, Buziba and Buhweju
17. He encouraged education by setting up many schools
18. He also built churches and encouraged the growing of cash crops
19. Because of his contribution to British rule he was rewarded with an MBE (Member of the British empire) honour
20. He retired in 1939 and died in 1944

### **Nabongo Mumia**

1. He was born at Lukera in 1849
2. He came to power in 1882, succeeding his father Shiundu
3. But his early years in power faced a lot of attacks from his neighbors
4. He was a peaceful and liberal leader who established contacts with the coastal traders
5. When the British came, he accepted their rule in anticipation of military assistance
6. His soldiers were used to fight those who tried to resist the British rule
7. His capital at Elureko was used as the administrative headquarters by the British
8. The British in return gave him military assistance to carry out raids against his neighbors like the Luo, Luyia, Bagisu and Nandi
9. Also built forts in his area in order to protect it against his neighbor's attacks
10. In 1919, he was made the paramount chief (Nabongo) of the Luyia of Wanga
11. He later died in 1949

### **Nyungu ya Mawe**

1. He was a prince of Unyanyambe ruling family
2. He fled the place in 1865 after the Arabs had beheaded the chief Mwana wa sere
3. Broke away from his people in 1874 froming his unit of power at Kiwele
4. Between 1870 and 1880, Nyungu ya Mawe from his centre orgaised the expeditions over most of the Kiambu country east and East of Tabora
5. He brought under his control the trade routes to the coast and other routes which joined Tabora to Ufipa and lake Tanganyika
6. He formed a strong and centralized administration
7. He placed his own rulers (Vatwale) over the conquered cheifdoms and they were directly responsible to him
8. However he didn't give these rulers any political or ritual powers
9. They collected ivory from conquered chiefs and sent it to him at Kiwele
10. The most important of the vatwale was Nyungu ya Mawe'e nephew- Nzwala Minoga Vanhu
11. He divided him dominion into 6- 7 administrative units each under a Mutwale
12. The units cut across boarders of the 30 old chiefdoms, therefore strengthening his centralized administration
13. He had an army of mercenaries, which were severely disciplined and given physical and psychological training
14. They were brave, professional soldiers, ruthless and savage in battle
15. He was a great doplimat who established contacts with the Arabs and Europeans
16. 1884, he died and was replaced by his daughter Mgalula
17. She reled successfully yntil her empire was taken by the Germans

### **Chief Awich of Payira**

1. Awich was a chief (Rwoth) of Payira in Acholi
2. He came to power, around 1880s after the death of his father- Rwoth Camo

3. Came to power, when the British were busy extending their rule to Northern Uganda
4. Awich's constant wars against the Paibona annoyed Major Radcliffe who tried to arrest him but failed
5. The British suspected him of giving assistance to Kabalega's fugitive soldiers
6. The British suspected him of giving assistance to Kabalega
7. He was asked by the British to expel Kabalega's soldiers but Awich refused
8. A British force under the command of Hermann was set out to him to be captured
9. In 1901, he was defeated, arrested and imprisoned in Kampala at Kololo
10. Realizing the difficulty of ruling Payira without Awich, the British released him and reinstated him to his chieftainship in 1902
11. In 1903, Awich refused to sign a treaty with the British representative Col. MacDonald
12. Other chiefs around Payira accepted British rule but Awich persisted in isolation
13. Awich once more helped in the inter-clan wars on the side of the Joka clan of Purnanga against Langis and Ogoora clan
14. The DC reprimanded him and fined him ivory, cattle and goat
15. He was accused of amassing guns from the Arab traders
16. He was arrested and taken to court in Nimule to face court charges
17. During court hearings, Awich lost his temper and a white man- Sullivan an expert in court affairs
18. This earned him another fine- 2 cows, and imprisoned in Kampala in Jan 1912
19. His chiefdom was divided into two, when he returned home in 1919, he was no longer a ruler and his chiefdom was no more
20. He was however instrumental in the spread of Christianity and book learning in Acholi
21. He died in 1920

**Explain the causes of the Mau- Mau rebellion.**

**What were the causes of the 1952- 56 conflict between the Kikuyu and the British?**

1. The Mau-Mau was an African revolt against colonial rule in Kenya
2. Mau Mau means 'Muzungu Ayende Ulaya Mwafrika Apate Uhuru' – let the Europeans go to Europe and Africans acquire independence
3. It effectively begun in 1952 and ended in 1960
4. The Kikuyu were fighting for political independence
5. African loss of land to the White settlers especially in the highlands
6. Africans had been pushed to reserves
7. Experienced overstocking, over population in the reserves
8. Africans hated racial segregation in jobs residential areas, education institutions
9. Social degradation of Africans by the whites
10. The Africans were poor while the whites and Asians were rich because they monopolized trade
11. The Kikuyu were tired of forced labour
12. They were given low wages or no wages at all
13. Africans were restricted from growing cash crops on the pretext that this would lower the quality of products
14. Reluctance of the British to effect constitutional reforms in Kenya
15. Some extremists in KAU were dissatisfied by KAU, which wanted peaceful means of achieving independence
16. In 1964, KAU extremists and ex soldiers formed Kenya Land Reform Army (Mau Mau Movement)
17. W.W.II veterans returned with new ideas and grievances for independence
18. Belief in traditional religion
19. Africans hated restriction of movement by use of Kipande system which was burdensome
20. Africans disliked continued domination of government by the whites
21. Africans were also not allowed to participate in politics
22. Lack of direct African representation in the Legco
23. Resented imposition of high taxes

24. Grievances like lack of jobs for the educated, education and general unemployment
25. Africans hated a ban on women circumcision
26. Fear of Kenya becoming another south Africa/ Rhodesia
27. African hated massive arrest, detentions and ruthlessness of the British
28. Reduction in the number of cattle annoyed Africans
29. The whites did not accept African chiefs
30. The role of educated elites like Kenyatta
31. Asians and Europeans were rich because they monopolized economic activities. Africans were poor
32. Hated the introduction of Christianity
33. Fear of Kenya becoming a white settler colony like south Africa
34. Europeans continued to dominate politics of colony
35. Encouraged by earlier resistances like Abushiri, Maji- Maji
36. Increase in the growth of nationalism

### **How was this rebellion organized?**

1. Started as an underground movement aimed at driving away the Europeans out of Kenya
2. The supporters took oaths that bound them to obedience, secrecy and support to the movement
3. As fighting intensified, the oaths grew more and more horrible and terrifying
4. Death penalty was inflicted on those who were thought of betraying the movement
5. It was a tribal movement and never spread beyond Kikuyu land
6. The movement had its headquarters in Nairobi where orders and supplies were issued to the fighting wings
7. The mass of people provided food, shelter and information to the armies in the forest
8. The movement comprised of ex- soldiers who fought in the W.W.II, squatters from European farms and willing youth

9. The movement was masterminded by the youth who fought in about 40 different groups
10. Young Kikuyu youths tricked to the forest of Abardares and the slopes of Mt. Kenya and the number swelled in steady stream under increasing pressure
11. The fighters used guns and local weapons like spears, arrows, pangas
12. They took to surprise night attacks, guerilla warfare and retreated into the forests that remained as their base
13. In their hide outs, formed gangs, launched their attacks where they could strike terror or steal arms and ammunitions
14. The movement was characterized by cattle thefts, crop destruction, arson and murder of Kikuyu and a number of settlers on isolated farms
15. Many chiefs who opposed the movement were hatched to death e.g. Nyeri, Waruhei of Kiambu
16. Many European victims were chosen from those who had done the greatest service to the tribe. It was aimed at destroying former loyalties
17. Many Mau- Mau supporters sang blasphemous hymns to well known tunes in which the name of Jomo Kenyatta was substituted for Jesus Christ
18. Great emphasis was placed upon a show of reverence for the common ancestors of the tribes Kikuyu and Mumbi and for their god Ngai
19. The hymn tunes were even taught in schools
20. Attempts to enlist the support from other tribes was done but did not take off

### **Effects of the rebellion**

1. Both Africans and Europeans lost their lives
2. About 1300 africans and 58 europeans died
3. In 1952, the colonial government declared a state of emergency in Kenya
4. Many Kikuyu, Akamba, Embu, Meru were forced into reserves and detention camps
5. Political leaders e.g. Kenyatta were imprisoned
6. Military leaders arrested were Kimathi, Itote

7. Many supporters were arrested e.g. 2600 Kikuyus were arrested in April 1954
8. Famine struck
9. Clans and families disintegrated due to being loyal or disloyal
10. Prisoners suffered harsh treatment and bad living conditions
11. It cost 50000 pounds to Kenya and Britain
12. Many Europeans started opposing colonialism and criticized Britain and white settlers
13. Settlers were forced to give up their idea of Kenya as a white man's country
14. Kenya's road to independence was accelerated
15. The British government came to good terms immediately with Africans and the white settlers
16. Kenyatta and other Mau Mau leaders were released to participate in government
17. Africans interests gained supremacy over Asian and white settlers interests
18. It led to the exodus of many white settlers to south Africa
19. Property was destroyed
20. Decline in Kenya's economy
21. A lot of insecurity in the central region
22. Political parties e.g. K.A.U were allowed
23. Nationalism was strengthened
24. In 1956, 5 africans were allowed to sit in the Legco
25. Their number was increased to 14 in 1958

### **Why did African resistance against colonial rule fail?**

1. Almost all African rebellions were unsuccessful
2. The Nandi, Hehe, Abushiri, Maji-Maji, Mau- Mau etc all failed
3. Europeans were militarily superior compared to Africans
4. Disunity among Africans societies

5. The teachings of the Christian missionaries weakened African societies
6. Collaborators also weakened those resisting
7. Diseases hit many African societies
8. Poor military organization
9. Poor military tactics
10. European countries were also determined to colonize East Africa
11. The colonizing powers used different methods to acquire their colonies
12. Many African chiefs were ignorant of the intentions of the Europeans
13. The spirit of nationalism was lacking in many African societies at the time
14. Tribal wars and conflicts
15. The weak economies of many African societies
16. Too much belief in superstition and traditional religion
17. The death of inspirational leaders also undermined African rebellions
18. The Europeans also employed the divide and rule policy

## **TOPIC 11**

### **POLITICAL DEVELOPMENTS IN EAST AFRICA**

#### **THE BUGANDA AGREEMENT**

##### **Why was the 1900 Buganda agreement signed?**

1. It was a treaty signed between the British Commissioner, Sir Harry H. Johnston and the three regents of Daudi Chwa II i.e. Apollo Kagwa, Stanislaus Mugwanya and Zakaria Kisingiri
2. It was signed on 10<sup>th</sup> March 1900 at Mengo

3. It was part of the British colonial effort to strengthen administration in Uganda for effective occupation
4. To define the position of Buganda within a wider Uganda
5. The desire to have effective control over Buganda
6. To confirm that Buganda had submitted to British rule
7. This was following the verbal declaration of a protectorate over Uganda in 1894
8. Making Buganda the springboard (starting point) for the extension of colonial rule to the rest of Uganda. After this, similar agreements were to be signed with other areas
9. Aimed at ending the existing political conflicts between Uganda and Buganda
10. To limit and control the powers of the Kabaka
11. Regulate and define the relationship between Buganda and the British colonial government
12. End the political confusion caused by Kabaka Mwanga
13. End Omukama Kabalega's rebellion
14. End the religious wars in Buganda
15. End the threats of the Sudanese mutineers in the north
16. Thus introduced the rule of law in the country
17. Lay a platform for Buganda's / Uganda's political economic and social development
18. It was to make Buganda safe for missionary activities
19. Making Buganda self-reliant through introducing economic reforms like growing of cash crops, payment of taxes and use of money
20. The British colonial government was anxious to reduce the administrative costs in Uganda
21. IBEACo had even collapsed because of financial constraints
22. To clear the confusion and effects of bad administration of IBEACo
23. To serve as instrument of colonial exploitation/ prepare the ground for effective/ fuller exploitation of Ugandan resources
24. In order to exploit the natural resources of Buganda
25. They wanted to streamline the system of land ownership

26. Answer to Bishop Tucker's cries to formalize the privileges of the Protestants over the Catholics and Muslims
27. Find an acceptable way to both the Baganda and the British on how to assist the infant king
28. Intended to reward the leading Baganda chiefs for their support in the takeover of Buganda
29. Introduce political reforms for the efficient administration of the protectorate
30. Baganda seemed to offer an ideal political atmosphere for development
31. Solve the boundary problems between Buganda and her neighbours e.g. Bunyoro
32. The need to follow the terms of the Berlin Conference
33. Serve as a legal document that would protect and safeguard the British

### **What were the terms of the agreement?**

1. Key terms were on land, finance, boundaries and system of governance
2. All men of 18 years and above were to pay a hut tax of 3 rupees
3. These taxes were to be collected by the local chiefs
4. No more taxes would be introduced without the approval of the Lukiiko and the consent of the Kabaka
5. Revenue from the taxes was to be for the protectorate govt. and not the Kabaka
6. The collection of tribute from neighboring states was stopped forthwith
7. All chiefs including the Kabaka were to be salaried
8. The Kabaka was to get £1500 and the Saza chiefs £20 each every year
9. All natural resources had to be in the hands of the protectorate government
10. The growing of cash crops was to be encouraged by the protectorate government
11. The agreement divided land into two; Mailo land (Freehold) and Crown land
12. Mailo land was given to the Kabaka, members of his family, his ministers and chiefs
13. The Kabaka was to get 350 Square miles, the princes 22 square miles, the Queen mother 10 square miles and the Saza chiefs 8 square miles each

14. Free land titles were to be given to them
15. Peasants settling on this land had to pay rent (Busulu) to the landlords
16. Crown land was given to the protectorate government for public projects
17. It included uncultivated lands, forests, lakes, swamps and rocky areas
18. People who settled on this land did not pay Busulu or rent
19. The institution of Kabakaship was retained and reformed
20. The Kabaka was to be the supreme ruler of Buganda
21. He was given an additional title of 'His Highness'
22. Daudi Chwa II was formally recognized as the Kabaka of Buganda
23. Kabakaship was limited to Muteesa's lineage
24. The Kabaka was to rule under the close supervision of a British
25. He was to be assisted by three regents namely; the Katikiro, Mulamuzi, Muwanika
26. The Lukiiko was to have parliamentary powers
27. It was also to remain the highest court of appeal
28. Membership to the Lukiiko was fixed at 89
29. 60 were to be notables, 20 Saza chiefs, 3 ministers and 6 Kabaka's nominees
30. The Kabaka was not to dismiss any member of the Lukiiko without consulting the British colonial government
31. Buganda's laws were to remain in force as long as they did not conflict with those of the protectorate
32. Buganda was to be one of the provinces that make up Uganda
33. Cases involving foreigners were to be handled by the protectorate government
34. African courts were not to give death penalties
35. Buganda's boundaries were to be redefined
36. The two counties of Buyaga and Bugangaizi were to be added to Buganda
37. Buganda was divided into twenty counties, each under a Saza (county) chief
38. The protectorate government had the right to abrogate the agreement

39. The Kabaka was not to form an army without the consent of the protectorate government

**What were the effects of the agreement on the people of Uganda up to independence?**

**How did the terms of the agreement affect the people of Uganda up to independence?**

1. Buganda lost her independence, as it became a province within the protectorate
2. The Kabaka's powers were greatly trimmed/ reduced/ undermined
3. Got a meaningless title of 'His Highness'
4. His political powers were reduced to constitutional monarch
5. He lost power over land distribution
6. He lost control over his chiefs who became public servants paid by government
7. He was also reduced to an employee of the British, earning a monthly salary
8. He lost his military powers since he could not raise an army without the British consent
9. He lost his judicial powers
10. He was no longer the final court of appeal- he could no longer pass the death sentence
11. He also lost his spiritual powers
12. He also lost control over revenue(finances)
13. He also lost control over foreigners
14. Buganda had lost a large chunk of her land (crown land) to the British
15. He could no longer rule arbitrary but assisted by 3 ministers
16. Buganda lost her political, social and economic independence
17. It created a new class of rulers in Buganda like the Katikiro, Muwanika and Mulamuzi
18. Traditional chiefs and clan heads lost their powers, traditional functions and privileges
19. The agreement empowered Christian and Muslim chiefs who collaborated with the British
20. It laid the foundation for the signing of similar agreements with other areas
21. For example with Toro in June 1900, Ankole in August 1901 and Bunyoro in 1903

22. It encouraged the growing of cash crops like cotton, coffee and tea
23. The agreement put Buganda in a special/ favoured position in the protectorate
24. She in essence became 'a state within a state'
25. Laying the foundation for Buganda's secessionist tendencies/ in ward nationalism
26. This elevation also made her hated by people from other regions or provinces
27. Some Baganda collaborated in extending colonial rule to other areas
28. For example James Miti, Apollo Kagwa and Semei Kakungulu
29. It confirmed and formalized British rule over Buganda and Uganda as a whole
30. It made Buganda part of Uganda and placed her on the same footing with other provinces
31. Poll tax and hut tax was introduced
32. Led to congestion in small huts due to fear of paying taxes which resulted into spread of diseases
33. Taxes led to the migration of people to areas where colonial rule was not yet effective
34. The taxation system also became an incentive to work
35. Confirmed the lost counties as Buganda's increasing Bunyoro's hostility to Buganda
36. The giving of land to the Kabaka's chiefs created a new class of landlords
37. It also led to the emergence of the Bataka Federation against unfair land allocation
38. It also created a problem of land aristocracy in Buganda
39. This led to the emergence of a new class of squatters/ tenants/ landless people
40. Created a lot of bitterness among peasants whose claims were overlooked
41. The Lukiiko was given parliamentary powers/ became the legislature
42. One parliament was complicated because of the conflicts between the Lukiiko and Legco
43. Made the colonial government fail to create a united Uganda
44. Led to development of agriculture especially cash crops
45. The agreement ended the religious wars that had destabilized Buganda
46. It re-defined the boundaries of Buganda to 20 counties including the two from Bunyoro
47. They were all allocated on a religious basis; Protestants 10, Catholics 8 and Muslims 2.

48. From this time the government started favouring the Protestants over the Catholics and Muslims
49. Strengthened the powers of the Kabaka e.g. no more taxes would be introduced without his consent
50. Laid the foundation for the abolition of kingdoms
51. It also encouraged the development of roads, schools and hospitals especially in Buganda
52. The police and the army were created to help in the maintenance of law and order
53. It began the exploitation of Uganda's resources like minerals and forests
54. Buganda collaborated in extending British
55. The British gained more than the Buganda from the agreement
56. Led to the growth of nationalism among the Buganda (Kabaka Crisis)

### **THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER**

**What led to the differences between the Europeans and Asians in Kenya between 1907 and 1923?**

**What were the causes of conflict between the Asians and European settlers in Kenya between 1907 and 1923?**

**What were the causes of conflicts between the White settlers and Asians in Kenya?**

**Why did the settlers send Asian and European delegations to the colonial secretary in 1923?**

**Explain the factors which led to the issuing of the 1923 Devonshire white paper**

**What were the causes of racial conflicts in Kenya between 1907 and 1923?**

**What were the causes of conflicts between the Europeans and Asians communities in Kenya by 1923?**

1. The differences rose as a result of European and Asian influx into Kenya
2. Land and political rights were the main issues in the dispute
3. Settler interests were being championed by Delamere and Col Grogan
4. While A M Jeevanjee championed the Asian interests

5. Europeans had been given seats on the LEGCO in 1907
6. In 1920, their number was increased to 11 but the Asians were not considered
7. In 1918, the Europeans were given seats on the executive council no other races were considered
8. Settlers wanted to turn Kenya into a self governing dominion
9. Under white dominion
10. Europeans had been given fertile land in the Kenyan highlands yet Asians were not
11. And other forms of segregation
12. Settlers opposed Asian demands to participate in political affairs in Kenya
13. Asian demands for equal treatment were opposed by the Europeans
14. Racial segregation in schools and hospitals was prominent
15. Europeans advocated for separate development
16. They had setup a convention/ association which became the platform for their views
17. Discouraged Africans from growing cash crops
18. Since this was likely to lower the quality of the Kenyan produce
19. And also draw off their labour supplies
20. Asians were allowed to live in towns only
21. Asian immigration was restricted
22. Asians wanted same voting rights as Europeans
23. Asians wanted monopoly of commerce and trade in Kenya
24. Rise of key Asian vocalists e.g. Maklhan Singh who advocated for equality
25. Governor Hayes Saddler had been too lenient to the settler interests
26. The Asians had the support of the colonial governemtn in India
27. Asians expressed their grievances through the East African Indian National Congress
28. African demanded the withdrawal of the Kipande
29. They also wanted a reduction in taxes
30. They also wanted good labour conditions

31. Wanted their land back
32. To regain their independence
33. Representation in government
34. Similar education opportunities
35. Be allowed to grow cash crops
36. Formed the young Kikuyu association and young Kavirondo association

**How did the Duke of Devonshire settle these differences?**

**How were these conflicts settled by the Devonshire White paper?**

1. The differences/ conflicts led to the summoning of a conference in London in March 1923
2. By the colonial secretary who was also the duke of Devonshire
3. Settlers were led by Delamere and Asians by A M Jeevanjee
4. Under the chairmanship of the duke, a white paper was passed
5. It became the Devonshire White paper declaration
6. The highlands were reserved for European settlers only
7. Asians were allowed to elect 5 members to the Legco
8. The Legco was to have 11 Europeans, 5 Asians, 1 Arab and a missionary to represent the Africans
9. Voting was to be done on communal rather than common role
10. They (Asians) were to be represented on municipal councils
11. Restrictions on Asian immigration was stopped
12. Racial segregation in residential areas was also stopped
13. No further advance towards settler domination
14. Europeans would never have controlling influence in the government
15. Kenya was confirmed as primarily an African country
16. And that African interests were to be paramount

17. Africans were allowed to be members of local councils
18. The preservation of African interests were to be undertaken by colonial office
19. A missionary was to be nominated to articulate the interests of the Africans
20. It led to the development of Kenya into a multiracial society
21. All racial groups were to gradually work towards self government
22. It ruled out any constitutional changes in favour of the settlers
23. Recognized the contribution made by the European community in the development of Kenya

**How were the people of Kenya affected by the terms of this paper?**

- a. All the 3 groups of people were not pleased with the outcome i.e. white settlers, Asians and Africans
- b. Asians failed to win an equal status with the whites e.g. were denied rights and became disappointed
- c. The white settlers lost their dream of ever controlling Kenya as a racist colony
- d. More whites came into Kenya
- e. Africans lost more land
- f. It disappointed the settlers and Asians hope of colonizing Kenya for themselves i.e Kenya was for the Kenyans
- g. Settlers having been disappointed in colonizing Kenya for themselves, resorted to controlling finance, agriculture and the industrialization sector
- h. Africans and Asians were denied settlement in Kenya highlands
- i. It increased the number of Asians in Kenya as it gave them liberty to free immigration into Kenya
- j. Africans were more as they were to continue providing labour on the settler farms
- k. Asians continued to voice their dissatisfaction with the favour given to the white settlers by the paper
- l. It laid foundation for future independence struggle among Africans
- m. It denied Africans a chance to sit in the Legco as a missionary was appointed to represent them
- n. It increased instabilities among the people of Kenya as the 3 groups remained conflicting amongst themselves

- o. The colonial government started training and educating Africans to prepare them for independence responsibilities
- p. Africans started sharing in the native of their country through the native to send one representative Mr. Eliud Mathu to the Legco
- q. Africans remained discriminated, less paid and exploited
- r. Asians refused to elect the 5 representatives to the Legco until after world war II

## **THE KABAKA CRISIS**

**What led to the Kabaka Crisis of 1953?**

**What were the causes of the Kabaka Crisis of 1953- 1955?**

1. Background lay in the 1900 Buganda agreement
2. And the delicate relationship between Buganda and the rest of Uganda
3. 1952, AC Wallis appointed to look into the problems of local government throughout Uganda
4. Suggested reforms including setting up of local government councils
5. But maintained that the protectorate government must maintain overall control
6. And resist attempts to fragment Uganda into a federation of states
7. Didn't include Buganda in his survey
8. He thought Buganda needed special status/ arrangements
9. Early in 1953, Governor Andrew Cohen had discussions with the Muteesa II and his advisers
10. Consequently, the responsibilities of primary and junior secondary schools was passed over to Buganda
11. As well as hospitals and veterinary services
12. The Kabaka was to appoint 3 ministers to carry out the work
13. The Lukiiko was to have 6 elected members
14. Which would bring about an elected majority

15. This disturbed the Lukiiko members
16. For they saw this as weakening their power
17. More over they were alarmed to see developments in the Legco
18. It was evolving into an essembly where Africans from allover Uganda had equal representation
19. The founding of the Ugandan national congress in Buganda also alarmed the Baganda monarchists
20. Its objectives of uniting all Ugandans were unwelcomed to the Lukiiko
21. Which was its self divided on the course of action
22. But the last straw was provided in the speech of the colonial secretary Oliver Lyttleton in London
23. Referring to an East African federation
24. A view that was irreconcilable to Buganda's interest
25. As well as most of Ugandans
26. Buganda hence forth demanded clarification on federation
27. Kabaka refused to nominate members to the Legco
28. Or even guarantee cooperation with the protectorate government
29. Supported the Lukiiko's demands for the transfer of Buganda's administration from the colonial to the British foreign office
30. And that Buganda should follow its own road to independence
31. Meetings between Cohen and Muteesa failed to resolve the conflict
32. On 30<sup>th</sup> Nov 1953, the British government withdrew recognition of Kabaka Muteesa II according to 1900 Buganda agreement
33. He was subsequently deported
34. Crisis ended with the return of Kabaka Muteesa (1955)

**What were the results of the crisis?**

**Describe the steps taken to end the crisis**

1. Following the declaration of state of emergency a Buganda delegation was sent to plead for Muteesa's return
2. Delegation included Eridadi Mulira, Thomas Makumbi and Apollo Kironde
3. Early 1954, Australian born professor Keith Wancock was sent to look into issues
4. This led to Namirembe conference of 26<sup>th</sup> June to 15<sup>th</sup> September 1954
5. 49 articles of the agreed recommendations of the Namirembe conference were signed
6. As an amendment to the Buganda agreement
7. Buganda was to remain part of Uganda
8. The Baganda were to elect members to the Legco
9. Most members of the Lukiiko to be elected
10. Ministers to be appointed by the Lukiiko
11. The Kabaka was to be a constitutional monarch
12. No further constitutional changes for 7 years
13. The Kabaka was to return if the Lukiiko and the people so wished
14. No reference to the East African federation without the wishes of the 3 colonies
15. 17<sup>th</sup> October 1955, Muteesa II returned amidst the jubilation of his people
16. 18<sup>th</sup> October 1955, a new agreement was signed at Mengo

## TOPIC 12

**ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS IN EAST AFRICA**  
**THE UGANDA RAIWAY**

**Why was the Uganda railway constructed?**

1. Was started in 1896 from Mombasa
2. To enable the British government to establish firm control over their sphere of influence
3. To provide transport for arms and military personnel
4. To ease administration in Uganda
5. The need to gain access to Uganda for the control of the Nile
6. To eliminate slave trade
7. To make it possible to develop the interior for agriculture and other economic activities
8. To provide an alternative for other forms of trade
9. To make transport quicker, easier and cheaper
10. To forestall other powers i.e. Egyptians and Khartoumers
11. To confirm with the aims of the Berlin conference
12. To facilitate missionary activities
13. To promote exploitation of resources i.e. minerals
14. To link E. Africa to the outside world
15. To make the economy of Uganda self- sustainable

**To which part of Uganda and for what reasons was the Railway line extended between 1912- 1965?**

1. The railway system was an extension of the Uganda railway from Kenya
2. 1912 extended Port Bell from Kampala

3. To connect Kampala to the steamer service on Lake Victoria
4. Jinja to Namasagali line was built in 1912
5. To encourage cotton growing in Busoga
6. The railway system in Kenya was extended to Uganda (1928) Nakuru to Tororo
7. To reduce congestion at the port on steamer service
8. In 1931 the railway reached Kampala across the Nile
9. In 1929 it was extended to Soroti from Tororo via Mbale
10. To encourage cotton growing and transport cattle products
11. In 1956 Kampala was connected to Kasese
12. To transport copper to Jinja for smelting
13. In 1965 Soroti was connected to Pakwach
14. To transport cotton and tobacco

**What problems did the railway constructors face?**

**What challenges delayed the arrival of the railway line to Uganda?**

1. The construction began in Kenya in 1896
2. A preliminary survey was done in 1892 by Captain J.R.L Mac Donald of the IBEACo
3. However work did not take off till 30<sup>th</sup> May 1896 due to
4. Lack of capital for the project
5. Initially it was estimated at 2 million pounds
6. But it eventually cost up to 8 million pounds
7. There were wrangles with in the British
8. Parliament could not see the economic value of the railway
9. The construction took not less than 6 years
10. 32000 Indian cowries and 500 clerical staff were employed during the construction

11. Africans laborers such as the Akamba's were reluctant to work on line
12. Those few Africans who volunteered to work did not go beyond their homeland
13. The Coolies suffered from jiggers
14. While the Europeans were victims of Malaria sleeping sickness etc
15. The Nyika county especially Taru plateau desert was dry and waterless
16. Other areas were subjected to adverse climate which caused floods
17. There were wild animals especially man eaters at Tsavo
18. Until they were shot by Peterson
19. There was also out break of small pox epidemic
20. Acts of indiscipline, disorder and wastefulness among the workers
21. Drought and famine necessitated the importation of food e.g. rice
22. The eastern arm of the rift valley present engineering problems due to escarpments
23. Beyond the Mau Mau summit there was hostile Nandi, Masaai, Nyika etc
24. These tribes saw the iron snake as representing European imperialism
25. As well as alienation of their land
26. They stole the equipment and disappeared into the hills
27. Hostility from the Germans
28. Language barrier
29. There was lack of transport for equipment and the water
30. Communication problems
31. There was also lack of storage/ port facilities at Mombasa and in the interior
32. It was only after 1900 agreement with the Nandi that the building preseded peacefully
33. Finally the line reached Kisumu in December 1901

**How did this railway affect the people of Uganda and Kenya?**

1. Transport and communication from the interior to the coast was made easier and quicker
2. East African was linked to the outside world
3. Uganda and Kenya were opened up for exploitation of natural resources
4. It stimulated economic growth since the crops grown could easily be transported for export
5. It promoted cash crop production
6. E.g. cotton in Uganda and pyrethrum in Kenya
7. It led to urbanization along the railway line (e.g. Kisumu, Jinja etc with its associated social problems such as prostitution)
8. Kilindi harbor also developed as a loading and off loading centre
9. There was loss of lives as who resisted the construction were killed. E.g. chief Orkoiyot of the Nandi
10. It led to influx of Asians. A fifth of the coolies remain behind to do business
11. Others came as drivers, clerical officers, traffic and station managers
12. The presence of many Asians later created political problems especially in Kenya
13. This is because Asians wanted equality with whites in terms of education, employment and representation in the LEGCO
14. The railway created employment opportunities for many people e.g. drivers, station manager
15. It transported rice to the Akamba people who were hard – hit by 1898 – 1899 famine
16. It eased British administration because administrators were easily transported
17. It led to loss of independence of Uganda and Kenya
18. African lost land to European settlers especially Kenya highlands
19. In 1902 part of Uganda was transferred to Kenya to give whites suitable land for farming
20. Slave trade and human portage were ended
21. Taxation was introduced to recover the cost of building the railway
22. Transport cost was reduced. Transport a tone of cotton from Kisumu to Mombasa cost only 600 shillings
23. East African economy was monetized as Asians brought rupees and later paper notes

24. It led to development of feeder roads
25. The Nandi and Masaai lost land where the railway passed
26. The railway facilitated the activities of Christian missionaries while led to spread of Christianity and western civilizations.
27. Small scale industries sprang up e.g. ginnery and cooper smelting. This reduced the bulkiness of raw materials
28. It promoted international and local trade. Local markets were created
29. It transformed Uganda and Kenya economies from reliance on Britian, instead cash crops such as cotton, coffee, tea etc raised money for the countries
30. It led to racism in Kenya
31. Led to the transfer of Kenya's capital from Mombasa to Nairobi which was more central
32. It increased standard of living of then East African peoples.

### **Why did the settlers come to Kenya in late 19<sup>th</sup> century?**

### **Why were the white settlers interested in Kenya?**

1. The white settlers who came to Kenya were from Britain, South Africa, Canada, Newzeland etc
2. Before 1900, settlers were arriving in Kenya on their own initiative/ adventure
3. At the eve of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, Charles Elliot gave them official encouragement
4. The British foreign office drew up schemes for quickly settling its excess European population
5. Attracted by the suitable climate of the Kenyan highlands
6. Wanted to develop the land through which the railway passed
7. In order to make it pay for its costs of construction
8. The British government fovoured the establishment of a new royal white dominion purely founded on the principles of the British traditions
9. Wanted to exploit African labour assumed to be idle and unskillful
10. Also to exploit African land since Africans were considered lazy to develop it

11. Attracted by fertile volcanic soils for agricultural purposes
12. Were also attracted by the beautiful sceneries in Kenya
13. Wanted to settle ex- soldiers of the Boer war of 1899- 1902 and first World War of 1914 -1918
14. Desire to stop inhuman acts of slave trade
15. And introduce legitimate trade so as to encourage cash crop growing for sale
16. Land in Kenya was sold in freehold to Europeans because Kenya was regarded as an estate belonging to her Majesty's government

**How did their settlement affect the people of Kenya?**

**How did their activities affect the peoples of Kenya?**

1. They introduced plantations agriculture
2. They grew important cash crops e.g. coffee, cotton, tea, wheat etc
3. Lord Delamere introduced scientific research to improve on cash crop and live stock
4. Local communities lost their land to the settlers
5. Led to the creation of reserves to settle the disposition Africans
6. Led to the formation of the Masaai- British alliance which crushed other tribes like the Nandi
7. Africans were subjected to forced labour on European farms
8. They imposed the Kipande system upon the Africans
9. They led to the complete colonization of Kenya
10. Africans were forced to pay taxes
11. Their settlement aroused African nationalism especially the Kikuyu against the Europeans
12. Led to the transfer of north territory of Uganda to Kenya
13. Introduced racial segregation in towns, schools etc
14. They restricted Africans from growing cash crops
15. Also set up companies to aid agriculture e.g. Kenya cooperative creameries

16. Roads and railway lines were improved upon e.g. the Kenya- Uganda railway
17. Restricted asian immigrants into Kenya
18. Led to improvement in the social services e.g. schools, hospitals etc
19. They dominated the economy of Kenya
20. Small scale industrialization took place e.g. in 1909 UNGA limited established a grain mill in Nairobi
21. They also introduced the legislative council in 1906
22. The settlers felt numerical superior to the Africans

**What was the contribution of the following in the history of East Africa?**

**Lord Delamere**

1. His real name was Hugh Cholmondeley
2. He first came to Kenya in 1897 from South Africa
3. He came on hunting expedition
4. He was attracted by the great potential of the country
5. He was a product of white settler influence in Kenya
6. The white settlers increased in Kenya as a result of the construction of the Uganda railway
7. He later returned in 1903 to settle in Kenya highland which was suitable for white settlement
8. Lord Delamere was determined to make farming a success in Kenya i.e. work hard for its development
9. He spent his personal effort and money on agriculture experiments in Kenya
10. He acquired land at Njoro and around Lake Elementeita of the development of agriculture in Kenya
11. Lord Delamere experimented on various types of wheat in the above mentioned areas

12. He also experimented on various breeds of livestock in Kenya i.e. the exotic breeds e.g. the Friesian etc
13. Delamere spent money trying to control diseases and climate problems in Kenya
14. Through research he was able to contain the “Rust” disease which threatened wheat in Kenya
15. He imported pigs, sheep and cattle although many of them died of the East coast fever
16. He carried out cross breeding of exotic and local animals which promoted the resistance of the animals
17. In 1902, Lord Delamere produced his first successful wheat crop
18. He also helped to develop crops like tea, sisal, coffee, maize etc
19. He was instrumental in the formulation of “masters- servants” ordinance of 1906 that was where the Europeans were masters and Africans were servants
20. The ordinance made the African interests secondary to the Europeans settler delegation to the Devonshire discussion in 1923
21. He later died in 1931 during the period of economic depression

### **Allidina Visram**

1. Allidina Visram was an Indian born in 1863 in India
2. He came to Uganda as a result of the construction of the Uganda railway
3. He began his commercial career in Zanzibar in 1870 during the prosperity of Indian ocean trade and long distance trade in East Africa
4. He later moved to the interior of East Africa and set up a base at Bagamoyo
5. During the progress and development of the railway inland, he set up commercial posts or centers along the line
6. He was the most enterprising Indian trader in Uganda in his time
7. He bought produce from African farmers for sell e.g. cotton, coffee, tobacco etc
8. He built cotton ginneries in Uganda e.g. in Kampala to process the cotton
9. He lent out money to African and Indian traders in East Africa

10. He introduced the banking system e.g. he built the national bank of India and commerce
11. He reached Kampala and established himself as a powerful trader by 1898
12. He owned the first shop in Uganda
13. He established stations along the river Nile and had agents in Jinja
14. He organised caravans which were sent between Uganda and the coast
15. His trade was mainly in the export of ivory and cotton
16. He acquired a lot of wealth and invested in oil mines saw mills a soda factory
17. He was a kind hearted man who gave out donations e.g. to Namirembe Cathedral
18. Because of his contribution to the economic development of Uganda a number of streets in Kampala and Jinja were named after him.

### **Sir Charles Eliot**

1. He was a British commissioner in Kenya between 1900 and 1904
2. He despised Africans as incapable of developing their own resources
3. He believed and maintained that Europeans had a civilizing mission in Africa
4. He supported and encouraged settlers from Britain, S. Africa, Australia and New Zealand to come to Kenya
5. In 1902 Uganda's eastern province was transferred to the Britain East African protectorate
6. This enabled the white settlers to get more land for settlement
7. The same year, Eliot passed the crown land ordinance which made it easy for Europeans to buy land
8. He transferred the Masaai to reserves and gave their land to European settlers in 1904
9. He recommended for the union of East Africa
10. He was against the settlement of the Jews
11. If they were allowed to come, they were to be segregated on the Uasin Gisu plateau
12. He was instructed to make the railway and protectorate pay

13. He resigned in 1904 when the British government issued that her primary duty in East Africa was the welfare of the indigenous people

### **Describe the developments in the following sectors in Kenya between 1900 and 1945**

#### **Agriculture**

1. Cash crops development is linked much to the white settlers who occupied the Kenya highlands
2. The first crops to be grown were maize and potatoes for cash and food
3. Lord Delamere experimented which farming in the Uasin Gishu plateau
4. Where he produced his first wheat crop successfully in 1907
5. In 1904, tea was introduced in Limuru
6. Sisal was planted near Thika in 1904
7. And by 1920, it had become the second most important plantation crop
8. Rubber was grown on plantations near the coast
9. Tomatoes and cape goose berries were also grown
10. Africans grew crops which they were familiar with e.g simsim, g/nuts etc
11. In 1904, the policy of reserves was began
12. Where Africans had to supply labour and not grow cash crops
13. In 1906, the attempt was made to produce in Nyanza basin but was not successful
14. In 1908, coffee planters association was formed
15. Where coffee trees were got from missionaries
16. Lord Delamere took coffee growing near Thika plateau
17. By 1920, coffee had become the most cash crop in Kenya
18. In 1920, large tea estates were established around Nakuru
19. In 1925, two companies from India were setup on large plantations at Kericho

20. Between 1920 and 1921, the government encouraged maize growing
21. In 1935, pyrethrum was grown in Kenya highlands
22. Vegetables were also grown e.g. cabbages, carrots etc
23. Fruits were also grown in the man hills

### **Communications**

1. Communication included railway lines, roads, telegraphic lines, water ways etc
2. Kenya – Uganda railway began in 1896 in Mombasa and extended to various parts of Kenya
3. In 1921, the railway extended from Nakuru to Eldoret and Kitale then to Uganda
4. Railways extended to Nyeri, Nanyuki Thompson falls, Magadi etc
5. Feeder roads were constructed to supply or feed railway stations with goods to be transported
6. Harbor at Mombasa developed due to easy communication by road and railway
7. Lake Steamer services on Lake Victoria established which busted trade
8. Major ports i.e Kisumu, Jinja, Portbell, Entebbe, Bukoba, Mwanza and Musomi were established
9. Many communication line linked Kenya highlands which had white settlers
10. By 1930, Kenya internal and international communication services had been established

### **Describe the economic developments in Kenya between 1906 and 1950**

1. Tea was the first crop to be introduced in Kenya
2. By 1904, tea estates had been established at Limuru
3. And by 1925, large tea estates had been established around nakuru by two Indian companies
4. The crop was then taken to Kericho and it became the second most important crop in Kenya
5. Sisal was introduced from Tanzania and first planted near Thika in 1904
6. And by 1920, it had become the second most important plantation crop

7. But its major problem was that the crop required strong machinery
8. Coffee was first introduced by the Roman Catholic missionaries around 1899
9. In 1908, coffee planters association was formed
10. Coffee farms were established near Nairobi in 1910, due to the coffee prices that had rose considerably
11. 1920, the growing of the crop had successfully spread to other areas
12. And became one of the leading crops grown in Kenya
13. Lord Delamere took coffee growing near Thika plateau
14. Wheat growing was introduced by Lord Delamere
15. However wheat had a problem of a disease called “rust”
16. Delamere then began researching on breeding a rust- resistant variety of wheat
17. By 1909 wheat in Kenya was widespread
18. In the same year (1909) a wheat flour mill was established in Nairobi and this stimulated the growing of wheat
19. Between 1920 and 1921, the government encouraged maize growing
20. Pyrethrum growing thought introduced around 1920
21. However the crop did not do well until insecticides were discovered in 1927
22. By 1935 the crop was doing so well in Kenya. Today Kenya is one of the leading producers of pyrethrum
23. Cotton growing was also experimented in Kenya
24. Sugarcane growing was also started
25. Stock farming was started by Lord Delamere on the highlands rearing cattle, sheep and pigs
26. However this proved unsuccessful because of cattle diseases and raids from the Nandi and Masai
27. Delamere then went into dairy farming after stock farming failing
28. This led to the establishment of a cooperative creamery in 1925
29. In 1937, Kenyan farmers formed an association “the Kenyan Farmers Association” whose aim was to develop agriculture and protect the interest of white farmers

30. Vegetables were also grown in the man hills
31. Rubber was grown on plantations near the coast
32. Tomatoes and cape goose berries were also grown
33. Fruits were also grown in the man hills
34. Africans grew crops which they were familiar with e.g. simsim, g.nuts etc
35. Africans had to supply labour not to grow cash crops
36. Communication included railway lines, roads, telegraphic line, water ways
37. Kenya – Uganda railway began in 1896 in Mombasa and extended to various parts of Kenya
38. In 1921, the railway extended from Nakuru to Eldoret and Kitale then to Uganda
39. Railways extended to Nyeri, Nanyuki Thompson falls, Magadi etc
40. Feeder roads were constructed to supply or feed railway stations with goods to be transported
41. Harbor at Mombasa developed due to easy communication by road and railway
42. Lake Steamer services on Lake Victoria established which busted trade
43. Major ports i.e Kisumu, Jinja, Portbell, Entebbe, Bukoba, Mwanza and Musomi were established
44. Many communication line linked Kenya highlands which had white settlers
45. By 1930, Kenya internal and international communication services had been established

**How were the peoples of Kenya affected by these developments up to independence?**

1. Large plantations of sugarcane, tea and wheat were opened
2. Africans were recruited to produce labour on farms
3. The economic activites of the Africans were diversified
4. Forced labour was introduced on the plantations
5. More white settlers and farmers flocked to Kenya
6. Land was alienated from Africans to open up farms
7. A cash crop economy was introduced in Kenya

8. Kenya's economy was monetized
9. Food crop growing was undermined
10. Famine occurred as a result of concentration on cash crops
11. Africans were able to use incomes from cash crops to educate their children
12. Taxation of Africans
13. The Kenyan highlands were gazetted for European settlement
14. Africans were prohibited from growing lucrative cash crops like coffee and pyrethrum
15. In some cases Africans were forced to grow cash crops like tea and sisal
16. African exploitation increased
17. Incomes of Africans were diversified
18. Africans were pushed into reserves
19. Africans became squatters on land now owned by new white settlers
20. The movement of Africans was restricted
21. The Kipande system was introduced
22. Africans became poorer
23. Led to the rise of nationalism e.g. Mau- Mau
24. Led to the rise of Masai- British alliance which crushed other tribes
25. Their activity led to the transfer of the part of the Uganda territory to Kenya
26. New methods of farming were introduced
27. Led to the establishment of communication networks like roads and railways
28. Revenue was raised which improved social services and for administrative costs
29. Establishment of small scale industries e.g. UNGA LTD
30. A lot of idle land was put into use by the settlers

## TOPIC 13

### SOCIAL DEVELOPMENTS IN EAST AFRICA

**Describe the development of education in Uganda during the colonial period**

**Describe the developments in formal education in Uganda during the 1<sup>st</sup> half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century**

1. In this period the colonial government did little to promote education
2. Schools were opened and run by Christian missionaries
3. Such missionary groups included the CMS, Mill Hill Fathers and Comboni Missionaries
4. Evangelism was however their main purpose
5. However their efforts and activities were at first concentrated in Buganda
6. However, they spread to other parts of Uganda but a little later
7. Whenever they would build a church/ mission, they would also put up a grammar school
8. The missionaries themselves acted as the teachers
9. Their curriculum emphasized the 3rs reading, writing arithmetic
10. However by this time very few African parents wanted to take their children to school
11. From 1900 the missionaries introduced formal school education
12. It was however ran alongside traditional education which they found
13. The aim of this type of education was to create and develop a literate community
14. Those who had this type of education could be clerks, interpreters and catechists
15. Most of the very first schools in Uganda were boarding schools
16. The first school was built in 1902 by the Mill Hill and named Namilyango college
17. It was mainly children of chiefs and influential families who joined this school
18. The same year a CMS founded school was opened- Mengo High school
19. A consideration for the education of girls was taken into account

20. And by 1903, 7,800 girls were attending school
21. The Girls syllabus stressed submissiveness, handwork and good behavior
22. In 1905, a boarding girls school was opened named Gayaza High school
23. It was built by the CMS
24. In 1906 Kings college was opened
25. In 1907 Ngora high school was built
26. In 1908 St Mary's college Kisubi was opened
27. Kisubi was initially located at Rubaga before moving it to Kisubi
28. More schools were opened up to Masaka, Kamuli, Iganga, Hoima, Mbarara
29. Such schools included Ntare school, Mityana SS Namukozi, Busoga college Mwiri, Bweranyange girls school, Kiira college Butiki
30. In the schools more emphasis was put on religious knowledge, English, geography and arithmetic
31. Most of these schools were run along denominational lines
32. They were headed by reverends, nuns and priests
33. TTCs were later set up but first at Mukono by the Anglican church
34. From 1920 the colonial govt. picked interest in education
35. It was because of weaknesses found in missionary education
36. E.g. they had neglected technical and industrial education
37. They had also neglected animal and agriculture
38. Their village schools were also overcrowded and poorly staffed
39. The colonial government thus set up a department of education to guide education
40. In 1922, the colonial government opened up a technical school at Makerere (Makerere college) to train the craftsmen and technicians
41. Later, Makerere college was affiliated to the University of London
42. Those who went there were awarded certificates, diplomas and degrees from the University of London
43. The first female graduate was Sarah Ntiro

44. Governor Sir Geoffrey Archer (1922- 25) took a leading role in the development of education in Uganda
45. In 1922 grants to mission schools increased
46. From 800 pounds in 1920, govt. expenditure on education rose to 88,000 pounds in 1933
47. In 1924, the govt. appointed Eric Hussey as the Director of Education
48. Between 1935 and 1940 Sir Phillip Mitchell encouraged the development of secondary education
49. Primary schools and theological colleges were built
50. Farm school/ agricultural colleges were built

### **Why the government did become interested in controlling education after 1920?**

1. Before 1920, education was in the hands of the missionaries
2. 1924, the government instituted the Phelps- Stokes commission to re- examine the state of education in all the East African countries
3. After research, the commission found a lot of weakness in missionary education
4. Their education was more theoretical than practical
5. They had also neglected technical and industrial education on their curriculum
6. Missionaries had also neglected animal husbandry and agriculture in their schools
7. The village mission schools were also too many and poorly staffed
8. The government therefore wanted to reduce on the village mission schools
9. Hygiene was also poor in these schools and the government wanted to improve on this
10. The government therefore wanted to rectify the above weakness found in education of Uganda
11. There was need for the inspection of mission schools
12. It wanted to change the theoretical system of education to a practical one
13. Wanted to include technical and industrial education on the curriculum
14. The missionaries had also found it expensive to shoulder education alone

15. This was because government expenditure on education was also negligible
16. The government realized the role of education in economic development
17. The need to establish a department of guidance to school education
18. There was need to provide employment opportunities to those who were unemployed
19. The government had no direct involvement in education, hence there was need to establish a department of education to guide the schools
20. There was need for the government to control the syllabus (what is taught) since each denomination was teaching what suited them.
21. It wanted to finance education
22. It wanted to introduce sponsorship to students going for higher education
23. It started financing education. From 800 pounds in 1920, the government expenditure on education rose to 88,000 pounds in 1933
24. The government wanted to increase their people like Eric Hussey in education administration
25. In 1924 the government appointed Eric Hussey as the first Director of Education
26. This was the first positive step taken by the government to take direct interest in education.
27. There was need to open Ugandan education to the outside world i.e. Makerere was set up for the East African students.

**Explain the role played by the colonial government in promoting education in Uganda before independence**

1. In 1922, the colonial government opened up a technical school at Makerere(Makerere college) to train the craftsmen and technicians
2. In 1924, the school expanded to include a section for training medical assistants
3. Later, Makerere college was affiliated to the University of London
4. Those who went there were awarded certificates, diplomas and degrees from the University of London
5. The first female graduate was Sarah Ntiro

6. Governor Sir Geoffrey Archer (1922- 25) took a leading role in the development of education in Uganda
7. Between 1924- 1925, the Phelps- Stokes commission was established to re- examine the state of education in all the East African countries
8. The commission recommended colonial government increasing its funding to mission schools and standardizing education
9. Thus from 800 pounds in 1920, government expenditure on education rose to 88,000 pounds in 1933
10. In 1924, the govt. appointed Eric Hussey as the Director of Education
11. In 1926 Makerere was left to prepare students for only professional courses
12. Teaching training colleges were built at Ndejje, Nkozi and Kyambogo
13. An inspectorate was set up to check on the standard of these schools
14. The mission schools were given grants
15. Between 1935 and 1940 Sir. Phillip Mitchell encouraged the development of secondary education
16. The first batch of Ugandan sat for the Cambridge Certificate of Education in 1935
17. In 1937 Makerere became an institution of higher learning for the whole of East Africa
18. In 1939, the college was given its first administrative council
19. The private schools were allowed to start which increased the number of students at Makerere
20. By 1939 the number of primary schools had increased from thirty five to seventy eight
21. A sponsorship program was developed for students to join higher institutions of learning
22. The syllabus were re-shaped to suit the needs and aspirations of the Africans
23. Primary schools and theological colleges were built
24. Farm schools/ agricultural colleges were built

**How did the development of formal education affect the people of Uganda up to independence?**

1. Girls and boys went to schools, colleges and later universities

2. They learnt how to read and write
3. Reduced illiteracy
4. They learnt also arithmetic
5. They learnt how to speak English
6. They learnt European values like table manners and how to use spoons and forks
7. Boys and girls of different tribes and backgrounds met and mixed freely in schools
8. Many Ugandan were converted to Christianity in order to benefit mission schools
9. Ugandans were trained as clerks, interpreters, secretaries, priests and teachers
10. Many children were separated from their families as they went to boarding schools
11. Some Ugandans got jobs in the education institutions and in colonial administration
12. Others lost land to give way to the construction of these schools
13. Games and sports were promoted in the schools
14. Drama, dance and music were also taught in the schools
15. Inspired African nationalism like Musaaazi and Obote
16. And became the basis for African leadership
17. Established social infrastructures e.g. schools, hospitals, still serving Ugandans up to today etc
18. People acquired new technical skills e.g. brick laying, tailoring, typing
19. Improved standards of living
20. Got scholarships to study abroad
21. White teachers were brought by the colonial government
22. Created the first class of African elites
23. Increased production
24. Development of talent e.g. in art

## WORLD WAR I

### Why was East Africa involved in World War I?

1. It broke out on 28<sup>th</sup> July 1914
2. It was between Serbia, Russia, Britain, France and their allies against Austria- Hungary, Germany and their allies
3. It was purely a European war but Germany and Britain had colonies in East Africa
4. The Germans were in Tanganyika
5. While Uganda and Kenya under the British
6. In Somalia and Eritrea, there was Italy
7. Yet Germany and Britain were the major war lords in Europe
8. East Africa became involved because of extended conflicts and suspicions in their colonies
9. Since K.A.R was a colonial force it had to fight in defense of its masters interests
10. The British government wanted to disorganize the German colonies before they could attack the British areas of interests.
11. The Germans deliberately provoked British colonies with the objectives of diverting British resources
12. East Africa was strategically located and so would help British to protect her colonial interests because of the war in N. Africa and the middle
13. Both Germany and British recruited the Africans into their army for the war
14. Africans participated for prestige and adventure
15. Africans were forced to participate by the colonial masters

## **How did this war affect the peoples of East Africa?**

1. Germany was defeated and had to surrender her colonies to the newly formed League of Nations
2. British took over the control of G.E.A in 1920 and renamed it Tanganyika
3. The number of European settlers especially of British origin increased in Kenya highlands.
4. There was an influx of soldiers/ white settlers leading to more loss of better African land
5. The local administration in Tanganyika was restructured especially under Donald Cameron
6. Indirect rule was introduced in Tanganyika
7. There was growth of political power among European settlers in East Africa (Kenya)
8. They agitated for representation in government
9. There was serious outbreak of influenza (1918- 19) which killed many people
10. Misery and suffering of many European, Asian and African families
11. Many people were killed wounded and disabled in the fighting
12. Internal and external trade disrupted
13. People living standards were negatively affected i.e. they became poor
14. The war led to increased African nationalism
15. Led to economic depression of the 1930's which also affected the people of E.Africa
16. African attitude towards the whites changed
17. The Germans, who mistreated African were punished
18. There was famine and starvation because of general decline in agriculture
19. Building, roads etc were destroyed
20. Ranks and medals were awarded creating a class of people of ex service men
21. Africans learnt new methods of fighting
22. There was increased rate of exploitation because the British wanted to compensate
23. New economic power was rested in hands of the Africans
24. There was an evolution of new ideas and critical thinking

25. Africans resented their chiefs who served the colonial master
26. There was wide spread of small pox, plague meningitis, syphilis etc (at least two)
27. The whole of East African territory became the British empire
28. After the defeat of Germany, Rwanda, Burundi were given or transferred to Belgium as mandates to be added to Belgian Congo they were transferred from E. Africa to central Africa

### **What changes did the British introduce in Tanganyika after 1920?**

1. The British took over Tanganyika 1919 as a mandated territory
2. They established a new administration and made the following changes
3. A new governor sir Horace Byatt was appointed
4. He retained the Akidas and generally the whole German administration
5. The major challenge facing the British at the time was to set the economy back on its feet
6. He was later accused of failure to put Tanganyika to a serious economic recovery track
7. Also failed to close up the gap the Germans had created between the rulers and the ruled
8. He was therefore replaced with a new governor- Donald Cameron 1925- 1931
9. Straight away Cameron instituted indirect rule
10. He closed the gap between the government and the people
11. He established the Native Authority ordinance of 1926
12. This empowered Africans to collect taxes, administer justice and carry out executive tasks
13. The same year (1926) he established the Tanganyika Legco of 13 officials 87 official members
14. Settlers were to be represented on the Legco
15. Africans were limited to local council and this frustrated them
16. In order to win back their support, he gave them land that previously belonged to the settlers.
17. The settlers found it very hard to get labour and when they got it, it was very expensive
18. In the land ordinance of 1923, Europeans were not to buy land for large estates

19. Encouraged Africans to grow cash crops on their shambas e.g. Arabica coffee and cotton
20. The government fixed wages to safeguard Africans
21. Many settlers went to Kenya hence reducing the settlers problem in Tanganyika
22. Taxation was introduced in 1923 to enable the British meet their cost of administration
23. Transport was developed e.g. roads were constructed and old ones extended
24. The mining industry was developed at Geita, by 1922 gold exports rivaled sisal
25. In 1925, they set up a department of education to supplement missionary efforts
26. Education was encouraged and schools were built to cool Africans
27. Land allocation and the soldiers resettlement scheme were put up
28. Slavery and slave trade ended in 1922
29. Political parties were later formed e.g. (Tanganyika African association) in 1919
30. There was improved government provision of social services

## **TOPIC 15**

### **WORLD WAR II**

**Why were the East African countries involved in World War II?**

1. World War II was fought between 1939 and 1945
2. This took place in Europe
3. Germany, Italy, and their allies Vs Britain, France and their allies
4. East Africa was under the rule of one of the warlords
5. When the war broke out it was impossible for East Africa to remain neutral
6. Moreover these Germans in E.africa had conflicting opinions, some supported Hitler while others did not
7. There were the British in Uganda, Kenya and Tanzania and yet back at home they both apponent warlords
8. In neighboring Somalia and Eritrea was Italy
9. The presence of such opponents in such areas caused suspicion and tension
10. Several battalions of the Kings African Rifles (KAR) were stationed on the Somalia boarder
11. Troops moved into Kenya joined by contingents from Nigeria, Gold coast etc
12. East Africa also contributed large sums of money to the British war coast
13. In 1940 for instance Italy joined the war as German ally.
14. Later when Japan joined the war on Germans side and attacked Britain, the KAR was expanded to 30 battalions
15. Thousands of East African soldiers went to India and Burma
16. Others went to Madagascar.

**What were the effects of the war on the peoples of East Africa?**

1. There wer political, economic and social consequences of the war on East Africa
2. The war hastened the growth of political movements (Nationalism) in East Africa
3. People's attitudes towards chiefs and African administrators changed
4. People began to resent them

5. Most British officials were away for military services and this widened the gap between Africans and Europeans
6. Exports declined and lack of skilled man power affected production
7. Uganda's cotton and coffee growers had to be helped by government when the prices fell too low
8. Otherwise the war increased the demand for sisal and cotton
9. Japan captured Malaysia with its huge rubber plantations and therefore Tanganyika had to increase rubber plantation production
10. The Africans in Kenya were for the first time encouraged to produce cash crops
11. Loss of lives
12. Veterans brought and spread venereal diseases and other STDs
13. Lack of employment for the veterans forced them to join the militant wing of the Mau mau e.g. General China
14. The British government directed technical schools and institutions to introduce and produce war equipment
15. After the world war II Tanganyika became a trusteeship of the British under a UNO provision towards self government
16. Many European communities began to change attitudes towards Africans for the better

### **How did the World War II affect the independence struggle in Kenya?**

1. Many Kenyans fought in the war
2. They served in Middle East, Burma, India, Somalia etc
3. They fought side by side with the Europeans, Indians and Arabs. European superiority was demystified
4. They expanded their horizons from the new lands and people
5. While in the army, they learnt how to read and write in English, others learnt technical skills
6. After the war, the ex service men became more critical and were less prepared to submit to subordination

7. They demanded better conditions for Africans
8. Several of them became leaders nationalists movements for independence
9. E.g. Isaac Gathunju, Dedan Kimathi, Kaggai Mwangaru, Waruhiu Itote (Gen. China)
10. Anti colonial movements overseas gave encouragement and support to Africans in the struggle

## TOPIC 16

### THE EAST AFRICAN FEDERATION

#### **Why was there a need for the federation of the East African states?**

1. It was an attempt aimed at merging all the EA states into the East African Federation
2. The idea was aimed at creating a large “British Empire” of all the East African states
3. Idea merged as early as 1896 during the Lugard’s days
4. It was carried forward in 1900 by Johnston
5. Charles Eliot also pushed for the idea between 1900- 45
6. Ease the exploitation of resources
7. Create an effective and common administration
8. Unite East Africa for effective administration
9. Coordinate political, economic and social activities between the three states
10. Foster cooperation on railways, posts, harbours, telegraphs, health and agriculture
11. Pressure from the colonial office after 1919
12. Common historical experience (they were all under the British)
13. Establish a stronger British East African empire after acquiring Tanganyika
14. Use similar laws and regulations
15. For easy direction and management of economic resources in East Africa

16. Have joint customs controls, postal services, currencies, metrology, statistics, defense and research in agriculture, veterinary and higher education
17. Merge both capital and human resources
18. Hence avoid duplication of services
19. Bring free movement of goods and people in East Africa
20. Bring a common market and currency for economic gains
21. For easier and cheaper exploitation of East African resources
22. To ensure unity and brotherhood among the peoples of East Africa
23. Need to recover quickly from WWI, Tanzania had a debt of 121,000, Kenya 412,000 and 10,000 pounds

### **Why did the attempts fail?**

1. The reasons were both internal and external
2. Strong opposition from Uganda and Tanganyika
3. The two states feared to be turned into settlers colonies like Kenya
4. The status of the three countries was not the same
5. Kenya was a settler colony, Uganda was a protectorate and Tanganyika was a mandated territory under the League of Nations
6. The Baganda felt that the union would undermine their privileged position
7. African leaders in Kenya feared that if the union is formed, the whites would dominate over them
8. The federation issue also met strong opposition from Sir Donald Cameron, the governor of Tanganyika
9. The economic depression of 1931 led to a desperate economic situation in the 3 countries
10. At independence each state took a different path. Kenya under Kenyatta went capitalistic and Tanganyika under Nyerere adopted a socialist approach
11. African and settlers in Kenya strongly opposed the union, for it was intended to benefit the British
12. The idea had not come from within, but from outside and therefore lacked the support of the masses

13. The successive commissions that had been established none had recommended that a federation was viable.
14. E.g. the L.S. Ormsby and Hilton Young commissions
15. Africans looked at the union as an attempt to sabotage their increasing influence in the politics of their respective countries
16. In Kenya, Africans felt that the union would interfere with their demands for more representation on the Legislative council.
17. Africans especially the Baganda looked at it as a stumbling block to their social and political progress
18. British after the departure of Sir Amery did not enthusiastically follow up the idea
19. The need for independence by the different East African states overshadowed the need for a political federation
20. The death of Lord Delamere in 1931 who was major advocate of the White settlers
21. European businessmen feared that the federation of East Africa would edge them out of business to the benefit of the white settlers
22. Fear that Tanganyika could anytime be returned to the Germans

## **TOPIC 17**

### **THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE**

**What factors contributed to the growth of nationalism in Kenya between 1939 and 1952?**

**Explain the factors that contributed to the development of nationalism in East Africa.**

1. Nationalism is the desire by a given group of people to achieve political, economical and social independence.
2. East Africans involvement in the second World War
3. The return of World War II ex-soldiers strengthened the hostility towards the colonial rule.

4. The ex- soldiers who fought along side them had began to doubt their superiority
5. Several ex- servicemen became leaders of national movement e.g. Gen China
6. Ex soldiers came back with ideas of equality, liberty and independence
7. The formation of the United Nations and its anti- imperial policy
8. Negro movements outside Africa e.g. the 1945 Pan African congress held in Manchester and attended by Kenyatta
9. The conference was dominated by African major nationalistic leaders who wanted freedom and threatened the use of force. This gave morale to the nationalist in East Africa.
10. The high levels of unemployment made Africans form mass political movements
11. The influence of Christian missionaries gave Africans courage to rise up for their own rights
12. The Atlantic charter of 1941 between Roosevelt and Churchill where the two agreed to give independence to their colonies
13. The charter provided that people world over have the right to choose their forms of govt. under which to live.

This declaration accelerated the temper of nationalism in Kenya.

14. The emergence of an educated class of people (elites)
15. These literate Africans could read newspapers, listen to radio etc which helped to spread the nationalistic ideology
16. After WW II the economic importance of Africa to the world market increased especially since Europe depended on her
17. Africans would have gained a lot had not been the lack of independence, which boosted nationalistic feelings
18. The granting of independence to India and Pakistan in 1946 marked the beginning of the forces of nationalism
19. The return of educated African leaders who had been studying abroad
20. Development of national languages, Swahili by Tanganyika and English by Kenya and Uganda created unity among Africans
21. The spread of socialism and communism
22. Prominent communist countries like USSR and China were anti- colonialism

23. Criticism and opposition to imperialism was widely publicized. This gave moral support to nationalists
24. The rise of USA and USSR which put pressure on colonial powers to decolonize
25. USA put pressure on the colonialists to grant independence to Africans
26. The growth of Pan Africanism (Africa for Africans)
27. Colonialism with all its evils e.g. forced labour, over taxation, loss of independence etc
28. Loss of land especially in Kenya is what inspired the Mau mau nationalistic movement under the Kikuyu
29. The formation of cooperative movements
30. The rise of trade unions due to the rise in the cost of living after the war. They supported and financed nationalistic movements
31. The independence of Ghana in 1957
32. The influence of Egyptian revolution of 1952 under Nasser who supported the Mau- mau
33. The role and support of the Africans in the Diaspora like Nkrumah
34. The domination of trade by the Asians (Indians)
35. Urbanization/ the rise and growth of many urban centres creating employment opportunities for Africans and broke tribal ties
36. Migrations of people from villages to towns also exposed them to new ideas
37. The existence of segregation against Africans especially in Kenya became a tool for nationalistic attitude on colonialism
38. The mass political awareness and formation of political parties
39. The role of the mass media
40. The development of transport and communication
41. The Italo- Ethiopian crisis of 1935 – 1941
42. The victory of the Labour party in 1945
43. The rise of independent churches in Kenya
44. The declaration of the 1923 Devonshire white paper had along them impact on the Kenya

## What problems did the Kenyans nationalists face?

1. Factional and tribal differences in the country
2. The Mau- mau was believed to be a tribal grouping of the Kikuyu and thus lacked support from other tribes
3. Europeans and Asians dominated the economic and political life of Kenya
4. Hostility of the colonial government which discouraged and even banned parties
5. 1953- 55 all African political parties were banned
6. Lacked funds
7. Lack of proper organization at both local and national levels
8. Difficulty of communicating with a large scattered population due to transport problem
9. Lack of common language
10. The mau mau movement precipitated the state of emergency starting in 1952
11. Violent methods used by Africans forced their white sympathizers to withdraw their support.
12. The detention of some leaders e.g. Jomo Kenyatta
13. As such their effectiveness was curtailed. By 1960, Kenyatta was still in prison
14. The nationalist movement failed to preserve its unity it divided into K.A.N.U and K.A.D.U
15. KANU attracted mainly the Kikuyu, Luo, Kamba, while KADU embraced small tribes
16. Differences in political ideologies i.e federation Vs unitary government
17. KANU favoured a strong central unitary government while KADU wanted a federal type of government
18. Clashed between personalities in the struggle
19. Threats of secession from the coastal Arabs, the Somalis in the northern frontier districts (North-Eastern)
20. Some Kenyans collaborated with the whites
21. Death of some African leaders, e.g. General China, Dedan Kimathi instilled fear in the Africans
22. And led to leadership vacuum

23. Presence of collaborators who could inform the whites on what the Kenyans were trying to do
24. Foreign interference in the activities of the nationalists
25. Domination of trade by the Asians
26. Limited supply of guns which could be used in the wars
27. Religious differences created disunity among the different groups
28. Some parties were even formed along religious lines which proved a big problem
29. Differences in the methods to be used to attain independence i.e. violence Vs diplomacy
30. The banning of political parties
31. The high level of illiteracy
32. The declaration of state of emergencies
33. Poor transport and communication
34. The Kipande system where people had to carry identity cards
35. Racial segregation of the whites
36. Urbanization broke tribal ties
37. Absence of capable and acceptable leaders who could spearhead the movement

### **What led to the formation of political parties in East Africa?**

1. A political party is an association of persons whose major aim is acquiring state power
2. Political parties in East Africa included the Kenya African national Union (KANU), Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU), Tanganyika African National Union (TANU), Uganda National Congress (UNC), Uganda Peoples Congress (UPC) etc
3. Most of these parties were formed and dominated by the educated Africans
4. They begun with limited and local complaints against colonial rule but soon grew and became national in outlook
5. They were formed to fight for the independence of their respective countries

6. They also aimed at demanding for greater African representation on the Legislative councils
7. They wanted the extension of the voting franchise to the Africans since they (Africans) had been denied the right to vote
8. The influence of the rise of Pan Africanism also drove Africans to form political parties. This is because they wanted to rule themselves
9. They were also formed as a result of colonial rule with all its evils like loss of land, forced labour, forced cash crop growing etc
10. They were also formed to fight against European exploitation of African resources like land labour and minerals
11. The influence of the Second World War was also a factor in the formation of these parties. Africans who fought in the war came back with the zeal to liberate their fellow Africans.
12. They were also formed to fight for the release of imprisoned African nationalists like KANU that was formed partly to press for the release of Kenyatta
13. They were formed to act as vehicles (platforms or mouthpiece) for airing out African discontent against European rule
14. The high levels of poverty and unemployment also forced ex servicemen to form political parties for example General China in Kenya.
15. The rise of African nationalism in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century was also manifested in the formation of mass political parties
16. They were also formed to fight the discriminatory tendencies of the whites. For example in education, health and employment
17. They were also demanding the removal of restrictions on the cultivation of cash, trade, free movement etc.

**What were the roles/ achievements of political parties in East Africa?**

1. They contributed to the achievement of independence in their respective countries
2. Through boycotts, demonstrations and riots, they demand for an immediate advance towards self-rule.
3. They fostered unity and brought different peoples and tribes together

4. They fought for freedom in their various countries
5. They contributed to the freeing of political prisoners like Jomo Kenyatta by KANU
6. They enlightened (educated) the masses about their rights in their respective countries
7. They led to the recognition of their countries nationally and internationally
8. They advocated for the equality of all races and the establishment of multi racial governments.
9. They acted as platforms for explaining the colonial ills to the people especially in local languages that were understood by the majority.
10. They contributed to the development of infrastructure like roads, schools, hospitals, railways and ports.
11. As a result of their pressure, Africans were able to get white color jobs.
12. They contributed to the development of agriculture like the establishment of Busitema Agricultural College and Kibimba rice scheme in Uganda.
13. They contributed to the attainment of republican status by the East African states for example Uganda in 1963 and Kenya in 1965.
14. They led to the establishment of adult universal suffrage in East Africa.

### **Why was there a delay in the rise of nationalism in Uganda?**

1. Sectarianism and tribalism
2. Uganda had no pressing problem
3. Uganda did not have a strong white community
4. Collaborators
5. Illiteracy
6. Ugandans were politically comfortable under colonialism
7. Peasants were growing cotton, coffee and tea and thus had a steady source of income
8. Banning of civil servants from participating in politics
9. Indirect rule encouraged parochialism or self- centered thinking

10. It also made Africans satisfied and contented with the small offices they held.
11. Conflicts and quarrels among the leaders of national movements
12. Lack of a national language
13. The nature of ethnic composition was difficult to bridge
14. Traditional rulers especially in Buganda looked at the formation of nationalistic movements as a threat to the monarchy and Buganda's special position
15. The leaders of political parties were not full time politicians; this was because they had other jobs.
16. There was also religious rivalry among the various Christian factions
17. The idea of political parties was foreign
18. Lack of acceptable leaders e.g. in Buganda
19. Inferiority complex among the Africans
20. Lack of funds
21. Poor communication networks
22. Threats from the colonial govt.
23. Lack of proper organization.
24. Detaining of nationalistic leaders
25. The first political party was formed in 1952 by Musasaazi.

**What was the contribution of the following to the history of Uganda?**

**Sir Hesketh Bell**

1. He was Governor in Uganda 1907
2. He basically fulfilled the aims of British colonialism i.e. exploit and develop
3. Developed cash crop economy by encouraging African growing of cotton instead of the settlers.

4. He issued the Uganda cotton ordinance, which ordered destruction of wild cotton plant seeds, replaced with American upland seeds.
5. Opened ginneries in Kampala, Entebbe and Kisumu to process cotton plant and restricted hand ginning.
6. He encouraged rubber growing and collecting wild rubber at Namukekera by Uganda company plantations.
7. Improved on health through campaign against small pox, meningitis and influenza.
8. Brought under control sleeping sickness by evacuating people around L. Victoria to safer places
9. Researched on animal disease (rinderpest) and found methods of control
10. Encouraged trade dominated by Indians
11. Designed a construction program that linked up all important centers of southern Uganda by all weather roads
12. By 1914 had bought vehicles used to transport farmers produce.
13. Completed 98km Namasagali rail link to Jinja in 1912.
14. As a result of infrastructural development, trading centres emerged.
15. Linked steamship between Kisumu and Jinja
16. This enabled Africans producers to transport and sell their produce to earn income tax.
17. Opposed whitesettlers to dominate land
18. In 1912 introduced Arabica coffee and Bagushi on cooperative basis.
19. In 1914 Robusta coffee was planted in Buganda.
20. Rubber experimentation took place at Namukekera in 1918- 1919 rubber export earned 26000 pounds in export.
21. 1922 tea plantations were established in Mubende tea estates developed in other areas.
22. 1925 N.K.Metha established sugar refinery and spread plantation schemes elsewhere.
23. Tobacco started in Bunyoro and spread to other areas of West Nile.
24. Cash crop processing and marketing was done by British companies anxious to reap huge profits.
25. By 1930- 48 due to improved transport, processing and marketing, the growing of coffee, cotton, tobacco, simsim, and groundnuts increased.

## **Sir Andrew Cohen**

1. He was the governor in 1952 during decolonization era.
2. Inaugurated industrialization through steel production through Mr. Simpson's announcement of 3 companies to join Uganda Development Corporation.
3. Discouraged the introduction of industrial colour bar.
4. Was sympathetic towards African Union.
5. Believed in development of the country's natural resources in order to increase state treasury.
6. Encouraged cotton growing and saw need for government to support African farmers
7. Enabled Africans take control over a number of ginneries
8. Others trained in technical and managerial branch of industries
9. Protected African interests in coffee ginning works
10. In October 1953, set up African loan fund control scheme to enable Africans get bank loans e.g. encouraged large scale capital enterprises among Africans.
11. Set up tarmac road networks
12. Extended railway from Kampala through Mityana to Kases to tap agricultural potential and copper
13. He appointed an education committee under Mr. Dan Busen to make recommendations for future organization and development of education
14. The committee recommended that senior secondary schools should be organized on a four year basis of school certificate.
15. Politically he fostered cooperation between British civil servants and the masses.
16. Planned to see a steady development of Uganda as a unitary state.
17. In August 1953 announced radical reforms on the structure of the Legco, which annoyed Lukiiko.
18. This plan for a steady formation of a unitary state caused the Kabaka crisis in October and consequently deported the Kabaka to Britain.
19. 1955, introduced ministerial system of government with 3 Africans appointed.
20. Reforms were made in the local governments following the Wilis commission.

21. Allowed political party formation in 1952 (UNC) aimed at ending colonial rule.
22. DO formed in 1954
23. 1955 returned Kabaka from exile and accepted Buganda demand for direct election in the Legco.
24. Checked much of Buganda secessionist tendency and managed to bring Uganda near to independence as a unitary state.
25. It would appear that he was withdrawn because of mishandling the Kabaka crisis.
26. Thus Cohen as a governor developed Uganda politically, economically and socially.

**Explain the contribution of the following to the achievement of independence in their countries**

**Milton Obote**

1. Milton Obote was born in 1924 in Kokomo village in Lango to a local chief
2. Attended primary and secondary education mission schools
3. Later joined Makerere University college for an arts degree
4. Was later expelled for political activism
5. He joined Mowlem Construction company based in Jinja in 1949
6. He later joined the standard vacuum oil company in Kenya
7. He became an active trade unionist
8. His stay in Kenya gave him real introduction to politics i.e he became member of KAU
9. In 1957, Obote returned to Uganda where he was appointed chairman of the Uganda national congress Lango branch.
10. In 1958, he was appointed to Uganda legislative council, representing Lango
11. In 1957, there was a split in the UNC with one faction led by J.J. Kiwanuka and another anti Baganda using led by Obote
12. Obote then followed his own party UPC under his leadership in 1960.
13. Joseph Kiwanuka then took over leadership of UNC

14. Buganda not ready to be part of Uganda's independence, wanted federal
15. Obote, the confined Buganda into UPC- KY alliance in the same year. (1960)
16. In 1960 election, Obote's UPC lost to DP led by Ben Kiwanuka
17. Kiwanuka therefore became the leader of the Legco and Obote leader of the opposition.
18. In the Legco, Obote strongly demanded for an immediate advance towards self rule.
19. 1<sup>st</sup> March 1961, Uganda attained self governance
20. Obote swept into power in the final elections of April 1962 with 58 seats in parliament for UPC – KY coalition against 24 seats for DP.
21. 9<sup>th</sup> October 1962, Uganda got independence
22. Obote became prime minister and Muteesa II as the first president of Uganda.

### **Julius Nyerere**

1. Born in March 1922 at Butiama near the eastern shores of lake Victoria to a chief
2. Went to Musomi for his primary, Tabora for secondary
3. In 1945, he joined Makerere University college for a diploma
4. In 1945, he returned in Tanganyika and joined a teaching carrier in Tabora
5. In 1949, he joined Edinburg University in Scotland where he attained masters degree (History, Econ, Philosophy) in 1952
6. While in Britain, he was influenced by pan Africanism and developed strong sense of nationalism
7. In 1952, he returned to Tanganyika and elected secretary of the Tanganyika African peoples welfare association
8. He became an active member of Tannganyika African association (T.A.A)
9. In 1953, he became the president of TAA
10. May 1954, he became temporary member of Legco
11. In the same year, TANU replaced TAA with Nyerere as the president of the new party.

12. Nyerere's TANU strongly opposed colonialism and advocated unity of all Tanganyika's for independence
13. In 1954, he presented African case for self rule to UN
14. In 1955, he visited UN trusteeship committee, demanding independence for Tanganyika
15. In 1955, he was elected to Legco but resigned after two years
16. In 1956, he went back to UN trusteeship committee and demanded for African independence
17. In 1957, his violent meetings were banned by col. Government
18. In the same year, he visited UN demanding 50% unofficial seats for Africans
19. In December 1957, he was nominated member of Legco but resigned after few months
20. In December 1958, Legco election, TANU had a landslide victory
21. Nyerere used the slogan (Uhuru na kazi) for attainment of Tanganyika's independence i.e. (unity, non-racial politics, spirit of freedom and hard work)
22. In 1960, another landslide victory in elections for TANU with 70 seats out of 71 seats reserved for African in Legco
23. 1<sup>st</sup> May 1961, Tanganyika attained internal self rule with Nyerere as prime minister
24. 9<sup>th</sup> December 1961, full independence from British with Nyerere as 1<sup>st</sup> president

### **Mzee Jomo Kenyatta**

1. Jomo Kenyatta was born in 1893 at Nsenda near Nairobi. He was a Kikuyu by tribe.
2. Between 1909 and 1914 he attended a Presbyterian Mission school where he was baptized Johnstone Kamau Wa'Ngenyi.
3. Between 1922 and 1928, Kenyatta worked for the Nairobi Municipality as a water inspector of water supply.
4. During this period, he was an active member of a Kikuyu political organization. He became the voice of the workers demanding better wages and housing facilities. It is here that he changed his name to Kenyatta (Kenya's light) due to political awakening
5. In 1928, he was elected secretary general of the Kikuyu Central Association. The main aim of this organization was to recover lands lost to the White settlers

6. During the same period, he became the editor of the Kikuyu language Journal- 'Muigi Thania' (unity)
7. In 1929, he went to London as a representative of the Kikuyu Central Association and pleaded the African loss of land to the colonial secretary. He stayed there for one year and returned in 1930.
8. In 1931, he again left for England to widen his education and political experience. He studied Anthropology at the London school of Economics
9. In 1939, while in London he wrote a book titled "Facing Mount Kenya". One of the first reliable books on African anthropology.
10. In 1945, while still in London, he organized the 1945 Manchester Pan African Congress with Kwame Nkrumah, George Padmore and others.
11. The following year (1946) he returned to Kenya and was given an arousing welcome by his own people – the Kikuyu
12. In July 1946, he replaced James Gichuru as the leader of the Kenya African Union (KAU), a newly formed political movement that demanded for more African representation on the Legco and more recognition from the government.
13. He became an active member of a clandestine (underground or guerilla) movement called Mau- Mau. With general China, Dedan Kimathi and Tom Mboya, they provided leadership for this movement.
14. During the same time, Kenyatta became the Principal of Githunguri Teacher Training College. His stay at the college was however short- lived. He was sacked by the colonial government that was now worried by his growing popularity.
15. Many KAU members were not happy with Kenyatta's leaning towards the extremist Mau- mau group.
16. They thus demanded a split in the party (between the moderates and exteremists) and by 1951 the split was inevitable.
17. Kenyatta stayed with the moderates. Because of the high respect he had earned himself, the Mau- mau fighters too, stayed in contact with him.
18. The same year 1951, he presented a memorandum to the colonial secretary Griffith, containing African demand for self rule.
19. In 1953, he was arrested on suspicion that he was the real power behind the Mau- mau guerilla activities.
20. He was arrested with other leaders and sentenced to seven years in prison.

21. By 1959, most of the leaders of the movement had been arrested. Gen. China for example was captured in January 1954. Kimathi who had continued with the guerilla activities was arrested in October 1956.
22. Despite the fact that the threats of the movement were over by 1960, people continued with the demand for the release of Kenyatta.
23. In 1960, a new political party called Kenya African National Union (KANU) was formed by African leaders in the Legco.
24. Kenyatta was elected President of this new party while still in prison but assumed its leadership in August 1961 after his release.
25. However, some people accused KANU of being too town-centred, radical and a tribal grouping of only the Kikuyu and Luo. These later formed their own party called Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU)
26. As independence drew near, Kenyatta tried to reconcile KADU and KANU but his attempts failed.
27. In January 1962, Kenyatta was elected to the Legco and during the general elections his KANU party won the elections with an overwhelming majority. However, its interim chairman, James Gichuru refused to form a government unless Kenyatta was released.
28. In February 1962, Kenyatta attended the second Lancaster House Conference that was called to draw up a constitution for Kenya.
29. In the May 1963 elections, he steered his KANU party to a resounding victory. The party got eighty-three seats and their rivals the KADU got forty-one.
30. On 1<sup>st</sup> June 1963, when Kenya attained self-rule, Kenyatta became the Prime minister. He chose his ministers from all the races and always stressed African unity.
31. On 12<sup>th</sup> December 1963, Kenya achieved total independence at Uhuru stadium

### **Tom Mboya**

1. Mboya was born around 1931 in Rusinga valley, western Kenya
2. He had a three-year secondary education course after which he trained as a Health Inspector
3. After school, he worked as a Health Inspector in Nairobi.

4. During his work, he was greatly touched by the living conditions and welfare of the Africans
5. He blamed the government for inaction and indifference to the conditions of the Africans
6. In 1953, he was elected secretary General of the Kenya Federation of Labour.
7. When political activities were banned due to the confusion created by the Mau- mau activities.
8. The federation remained the only forum for those who wanted to air out their grievances and discontent against the colonial government
9. During his tenure of office, he established contacts with overseas Labour organizations like in the United States and Britain
10. This greatly enhanced his credibility
11. In 1957, he established the People's Convention Party (PCP) to contest the elections to the Legislative council.
12. In 1958, he was elected to the Legislative council with three other African members, due to the reforms introduced in 1957 by the new colonial secretary, Lennox – Boyd
13. He became one of the vocal members on council
14. He strongly opposed Lennox – Boyd's constitutional changes whereby the twelve specially elected members had to be chosen by the Legco.
15. He thus led other African members into a boycott, demanded a full constitutional conference and the release of Kenyatta.
16. In 1960, Tom Mboya was one of the African representatives who participated in the Lancaster House conference in London
17. This conference gave the African majority on the unofficial side of the Legislative council.
18. In March 1960, Mboya with other African members to the Legco (Oginga Odinga, James Gichuru) formed the Kenya African National Union (KANU)
19. He was elected secretary General of this new party.
20. He participated in the elections of 1961 through which KANU got a resounding victory (KANU 83 seats, KADU 41 seats)
21. However, it refused to form a government until Kenyatta was released.
22. With other African nationalists, Tom Mboya organized and arranged for the independence of Kenya.

### **Why was the Tanganyika African National Union formed?**

1. Formed on 7/7/1954 from Tanganyika African Association.
2. Aimed at achieving in TZ mobilize Tanganyika for the above cause
3. Call for African representation on the Legco.
4. Africanisation of civil services
5. Fight Europeans exploitation
6. Influence World War II
7. Rise of African nationalism
8. Fight discrimination of Africans
9. Fight against colonial evil rule i.e. forced cash crop growing
10. Rise of African nationalism
11. Removal of restriction on trade
12. Seen as a mouth piece for African air out

### **Describe the role of the Tanganyika African national union (TANU) in the achievement of independence in Tanganyika?**

#### **Explain the contribution of TANU to the history of Tanganyika.**

1. Formed on 7<sup>th</sup> July 1954 from Tanganyika African Association (TAA) i.e. called Saba saba
2. Made clear that Tanganyika was mainly African and therefore had to have an African majority government
3. 1954, TANU presented a report to UN visiting team proposing a planned constitutional process towards independence over the next 20 to 25 years.

4. 1955, Nyerere was the president of TANU visited the UN in New York to explain TANU's aim and to press for support
5. He won much sympathy and respect
6. 1957, it demanded independence in the next 2 years
7. When its demand for one vote was rejected, Nyerere resigned his seat on the Legco.
8. Largely owing to its multi racial policy, Tanu won a land slide victory during the Legco elections in 1958
9. 1960, TANU won the elections and Nyerere became the chief minister
10. TANU called for independence the following year and it was granted
11. It Africanized the civil service and introduced a special training scheme to accelerate a change over
12. On 9<sup>th</sup> December 1961, Tanganyika was granted its independence with TANU forming government
13. 1963, Tanganyika became a one party state under TANU
14. It promoted education
15. It improved on infrastructure like roads, schools
16. Brought national unity

### **What problems did TANU face up to 1961?**

1. Lack of transport
2. Tanganyika was too big for effective mobilization
3. Its dear call for independence upset the governments plans and they became so hostile
4. Some TANU members denounced the government schemes for agricultural improvement and pest control
5. Such acts discredited the party and led to some of their meetings being banned
6. 1956, a new party i.e Tanganyika party emerged to challenge TANU
7. Lack of adequate funds
8. The majority of the people were illiterate

9. Closure of some party branches by the central government

### **Why was the Kenya African National Union (KANU) formed?**

1. Started as KAU(Kenya African Union) formed by Eliad in the 1940's
2. Later renamed and strengthened the Kenya African National Union (KANU)
3. By Jomo Kenyatta in the 1950s
4. It was formed to fight for the independence of their respective countries
5. Also aimed at demanding for greater African representation on the Legislative councils
6. Formed to fight against European exploitation of African resources like land, labour and minerals
7. The influence of the Second World War was also a factor in the formation of this party.
8. Africans who fought in the war came back with the zeal to liberate their fellow Africans
9. To demand the removal of restrictions on the civilization of cash, trade, free movement etc
10. To fight the discriminatory tendencies of the whites. For example, in education, health and employment
11. The rise of African nationalism in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century
12. To fight the high levels of poverty and unemployment
13. To act as a vehicle for airing out African discontent against European rule
14. Wanted the extension of the voting franchise to the Africans
15. The influence of the rise of Pan Africanism
16. To fight the land grabbing of the whites
17. To fight the forced labour
18. Revive African cultures and customs
19. To fight the over taxation and exploitation
20. Kenyatta return to Kenya
21. Asian control or monopoly of trade

22. The role of communist countries
23. The influence of Egypt
24. The independence of Ghana
25. Fight for national unity along the Harambee philosophy
26. Wanted Africanisation of the social service
27. Fight for the release of political prisoners like Kenyatta

**Explain the contribution of KANU to the history of Kenya**

1. Called for immediate independence
2. Formed Mau Mau to liberate Kenya
3. Using the Mau Mau they made Kenya ungovernable to the whites
4. Using the philosophy of Harambee, national unity was fostered
5. African cultures were revived
6. Racial segregation came to an end in Kenya
7. Groomed leaders like Gen China, Kenyatta who were instrumental in the struggle for independence
8. Demanded for greater representation on the Legco
9. Participated in the constitutional/ independence making of Kenya
10. Won internal sympathy, support and respect
11. Demanded for the release of political prisoners after Mau mau
12. Demanded for African franchise
13. Worked as a mouth piece for the Africans
14. It Africanized the civil services
15. It led to Kenya's independence